

# Utah State University DigitalCommons@USU

All Graduate Theses and Dissertations

**Graduate Studies** 

8-2019

# Generalization of Signal Point Target Code

Md Munibun Billah Utah State University

Follow this and additional works at: https://digitalcommons.usu.edu/etd

Part of the Electrical and Computer Engineering Commons

# **Recommended Citation**

Billah, Md Munibun, "Generalization of Signal Point Target Code" (2019). *All Graduate Theses and Dissertations*. 7586. https://digitalcommons.usu.edu/etd/7586

This Thesis is brought to you for free and open access by the Graduate Studies at DigitalCommons@USU. It has been accepted for inclusion in All Graduate Theses and Dissertations by an authorized administrator of DigitalCommons@USU. For more information, please contact digitalcommons@usu.edu.



# GENERALIZATION OF SIGNAL POINT TARGET CODE

by

Md Munibun Billah

A thesis submitted in partial fulfillment of the requirements for the degree

of

# MASTER OF SCIENCE

in

Electrical Engineering

Approved:

Todd Moon, Ph.D. Major Professor Jacob Gunther, Ph.D. Committee Member

Janak Sodha, Ph.D. Committee Member Richard S. Inouye, Ph.D. Vice Provost for Graduate Studies

UTAH STATE UNIVERSITY Logan, Utah

2019

| $\operatorname{Copyright}  \textcircled{C}$ | Md Munibun | Billah | 2019 |
|---|------------|--------|------|
|---|------------|--------|------|

All Rights Reserved

# ABSTRACT

## Generalization of Signal Point Target Code

by

# Md Munibun Billah, MASTER OF SCIENCE Utah State University, 2019

Major Professor: Todd Moon, Ph.D. Department: Electrical and Computer Engineering

Signal Point Target Codes have been proposed as an alternative to Trellis Coded Modulation. In this thesis, the basic definition of Signal Point Target Code including larger signal constellations, larger state size, different rate, and different shapes are extended in several ways. A notation is introduced to describe the operations, constellations of different sizes and codes of different rates are presented. Performance is evaluated by simulation and by distance bounds on the decoding trellis. Simulations are performed using different Programming languages to determine the suitable language for studying error correction coding.

(160 pages)

# PUBLIC ABSTRACT

# Generalization of Signal Point Target Code Md Munibun Billah

Detecting and correcting errors occurring in the transmitted data through a channel is a task of great importance in digital communication. In Error Correction Coding (ECC), some redundant data is added with the original data while transmitting. By exploiting the properties of the redundant data, the errors occurring in the data from the transmission can be detected and corrected. In this thesis, a new coding algorithm named Signal Point Target Code has been studied and various properties of the proposed code have been extended.

Signal Point Target Code (SPTC) uses a predefined shape within a given signal constellation to generate a parity symbol. In this thesis, the relation between the employed shape and the performance of the proposed code have been studied and an extension of the SPTC are presented.

This research presents simulation results to compare the performances of the proposed codes. The results have been simulated using different programming languages, and a comparison between those programming languages is provided. The performance of the codes are analyzed and possible future research areas have been indicated. To my parents who shaped my knowledge about life and to Dr. Moon who shaped my knowledge about mathematics.

#### ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

There are a lot of people in my life without their influence it wasn't possible for me to be here where I am today.

First and foremost, I would like to thank Dr. Todd K. Moon for supervising my master's thesis and giving me valuable direction throughout my research. Dr. Moon, without any doubt, is the best teacher and guide I have ever seen in my life. He made me like and hate math at the same time and made me realize how much I still need to learn.

Next, I would like to thank my committee members, Dr. Gunther, and Dr. Sodha. I would especially like to thank Dr. Sodha for introducing the topic on which my entire thesis is based on and giving me valuable insights during my research. I also want to mention Dr. Phillips's name here. I learned a lot while working as a grader for his courses.

I would like to thank Dr. Mehedi Hasan and Waled Al-Dulaimi for all their support. I also want to mention the name of Abrar Zahin, Rakin Muhammad Shadab, Abdullah Al Sarfin, Nazmus Sakib Rafi, Nazmus Sakib, Dr. Abul Bashar Mohammad Giasuddin, Ferdous Parvez, Saju Saha for being my good friends.

I want to thank Tricia Brandenburg for being such a wonderful person and Diane Buist for all the chocolates in front of her table.

Last but not least, I want to thank my parents and siblings for all their guidance, support and for being patient with me throughout the journey of my life.

Md Munibun Billah

# CONTENTS

| ABSTRACT   | iii  |
|--|--|
| PUBLIC ABSTRACT  | iv   |
| ACKNOWLEDGMENTS  | vi   |
| LIST OF TABLES   | ix   |
| LIST OF FIGURES  | х  |
| ACRONYMS   | ciii   |
| 1       INTRODUCTION         1.1       Overview         1.2       Literature Review         1.3       Thesis Objectives         1.4       Chapter Outlines   | $     \begin{array}{c}       1 \\       1 \\       2 \\       3     \end{array} $  |
| 2SIGNAL POINT TARGET CODE2.1Encode2.2Decode2.3Free Euclidean Distance2.4Generalization to any M-ary QAM2.5Encoding of Rate $\frac{k}{k+1}$ Code2.5.1Sequential Input Encoding2.5.2Partial Parallel Encoding2.5.3Decoding a k/(k+1) Rate Code   | $5 \\ 5 \\ 18 \\ 20 \\ 26 \\ 37 \\ 37 \\ 39 \\ 40$   |
| <ul> <li>3 SIMULATION AND RESULTS</li> <li>3.1 Calculation of Energy Per Bit for Simulation</li> <li>3.2 Performance of SPTC and CAC for Rate 1/2 Codes</li> <li>3.2.1 Performance of SPTC</li> <li>3.2.2 Performance of CAC</li> <li>3.2.3 Comparison of Performance Between CAC and SPTC</li> <li>3.4 Performance of CAC for Rate 2/3 and Rate 3/4 Codes</li> <li>3.4.1 Simulation Results for Rate 2/3 and Rate 3/4 Codes Using SIE</li> <li>3.4.2 Simulation Results for Rate 2/3 and Rate 3/4 Codes Using PPE</li> <li>3.4.3 Summarization of Results</li> <li>3.5 Comparison Between Different Programming Languages Used for Simulations</li> </ul> | <ul> <li>43</li> <li>43</li> <li>49</li> <li>49</li> <li>53</li> <li>59</li> <li>63</li> <li>64</li> <li>64</li> <li>68</li> <li>71</li> <li>72</li> </ul> |

|   | ٠ | ٠ | ٠ |
|---|---|---|---|
| v | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| • | - | - | - |

| 4  | PEF  | RFORM  | IANCE    | OF C   | OD  | ES  | W   | IT   | ΗI            | A    | RC     | ξE  | R   | SЛ  | 'A' | ТF | $\mathbf{S}$ |    |     |     |                |     |   |   |   |     |   |    | 74  |
|----|------|--------|----------|--------|-----|-----|-----|------|---------------|------|--------|-----|-----|-----|-----|----|--------------|----|-----|-----|----------------|-----|---|---|---|-----|---|----|-----|
|    | 4.1  | Study  | the Per  | forma  | nce | of  | Co  | ode  | s fo          | or I | Dif    | fer | en  | t r | nui | mb | er           | of | S   | tat | es             | : . |   |   |   |     |   |    | 74  |
|    | 4.2  | Comp   | arison H | Betwee | nТ  | The | Pe  | erfo | $\mathbf{rm}$ | and  | $\cos$ | of  | f S | on  | ne  | W  | ell          | K  | no  | wr  | 1 <sup>-</sup> | ГС  | M | a | n | d ( | C | AC | 79  |
| 5  | CON  | NCLUS: | ION AN   | ID FU  | ΤU  | JRI | ΞV  | VO   | RK            |      |        |     |     |     |     |    |              |    |     |     |                |     |   |   |   |     |   |    | 81  |
|    | 5.1  | Contri | ibution  |        |     |     |     |      |               |      |        |     |     |     |     | •  |              |    |     |     |                |     |   |   |   |     |   |    | 81  |
|    | 5.2  | Conclu | usion .  |        |     |     |     |      |               |      |        |     |     |     |     |    |              |    |     |     |                |     |   |   |   |     |   |    | 82  |
|    | 5.3  | Future | e Work   |        |     |     |     |      |               |      |        |     |     |     |     | •  |              | •  | • • |     | •              |     |   | • |   |     |   | •  | 82  |
| RI | EFER | ENCE   | S        |        |     |     | ••• | •••  |               |      |        | •   |     |     | •   |    |              |    |     |     |                |     |   |   | • |     |   |    | 84  |
| AI | PEN  | DICES  |          |        |     |     |     |      |               |      |        |     |     |     |     |    |              |    |     |     |                |     |   |   |   |     |   |    | 85  |
|    | Α    | Q func | ction    |        |     |     |     |      |               |      |        |     |     |     |     | •  |              |    |     |     |                |     |   |   |   |     |   |    | 86  |
|    | В    | Code   |          |        |     |     |     |      |               |      |        |     |     |     |     |    |              |    |     |     |                |     |   |   |   |     |   |    | 87  |
|    |      | B.1    | Matla    | o Code | э.  |     |     |      |               |      |        |     |     |     |     |    |              |    |     |     |                |     |   |   |   |     |   |    | 87  |
|    |      | B.2    | Julia (  | Code   |     |     |     |      |               |      |        |     |     |     |     |    |              |    |     |     |                |     |   |   |   |     |   |    | 101 |
|    |      | B.3    | Pytho    | n Cod  | э.  |     |     |      |               |      |        |     |     |     |     |    |              |    |     |     |                |     |   |   |   |     |   |    | 132 |

# LIST OF TABLES

| Page |   | Table |
|------|---|-------|
| 7    | Input output relation table for $\oplus$ where column s is input symbol and row j is the number of steps along the predefined path.                 | 2.1   |
| 9    | Input output relation table for $\ominus$ where column $t$ is the input target point<br>and row $a$ is the input current point in the signal space  | 2.2   |
| 11   | Input output relation table for $\oplus$ where column s is input symbol and row j is the number of steps along the predefined path.                 | 2.3   |
| 12   | Input output relation table for $\oplus$ where column s is input symbol and row j is the number of steps along the predefined path.                 | 2.4   |
| 13   | Input output relation table for $\oplus$ where column s is input symbol and row j is the number of steps along the predefined path.                 | 2.5   |
| 14   | Input output relation table for $\oplus$ where column s is input symbol and row j is the number of steps along the predefined path.                 | 2.6   |
| 14   | Input output relation table for $\ominus$ where column $t$ is the input target point<br>and row $a$ is the input current point in the signal space. | 2.7   |
| 15   | Input output relation table for $\ominus$ where column $t$ is the input target point<br>and row $a$ is the input current point in the signal space. | 2.8   |
| 71   | Summarization of results obtained for SPTC and CAC.   | 3.1   |
| 72   | Average Simulation Times for Different programming Languages  | 3.2   |
| 78   | Free Euclidean Distance and Asymptotic Coding Gain for Different Number<br>of States.   | 4.1   |
| 80   | Comparison Between Rate 1/2 CAC on 16QAM Constellation and Trellis<br>Codes for 8-PSK using Asymptotic Coding Gain.                                 | 4.2   |

# LIST OF FIGURES

| Figure |   | Page |
|--------|---|------|
| 2.1    | 16-QAM signal constellation with a shape indicated by blue arrows   | 6    |
| 2.2    | 16-QAM signal constellation with a square shape indicated by blue arrows which can be traced by target point.   | 8    |
| 2.3    | 64-QAM signal constellation with a shape indicated by blue arrows   | 10   |
| 2.4    | Representation $\oplus$ and $\ominus$ operation on a M sided regular polygon  | 15   |
| 2.5    | Example of trellis structure using a QPSK constellation   | 17   |
| 2.6    | QPSK signal constellation with a shape indicated by blue arrows   | 18   |
| 2.7    | Trellis structure for SPTC using QPSK constellation for fixed target point $t = 0$ and shape shown in Fig. 2.6  | 19   |
| 2.8    | QPSK constellation.   | 21   |
| 2.9    | Branches (black solid line) on the trellis that results in $d_{\text{free}}^2$ for SPTC on QPSK for fixed target point $t = 0$ and shape shown in Fig. 2.6  | 21   |
| 2.10   | QPSK signal constellation with a shape indicated by blue arrows   | 22   |
| 2.11   | Trellis structure for SPTC using QPSK constellation for fixed target point $t = 0$ and shape shown in Fig. 2.10.  | 23   |
| 2.12   | Branches (black solid line) on the trellis that results in $d_{\text{free}}^2$ for SPTC on QPSK for fixed target point $t = 0$ and shape shown in Fig. 2.10 | 24   |
| 2.13   | Branches (black solid line) on the trellis that results in $d_{\text{free}}^2$ for SPTC on 16QAM for fixed target point $t = 0$ and shape shown in Fig. 2.1 | 25   |
| 2.14   | Trellis structure for CAC using QPSK constellation shown in Fig. 2.6  | 28   |
| 2.15   | Branches (black solid line) on the trellis that results in $d_{\text{free}}^2$ for CAC on QPSK constellation shown in Fig. 2.6.                             | 29   |
| 2.16   | QPSK signal constellation with bit assignment that produces $d_{\text{free}}^2 = 20E_{c,s}$ .   | 29   |
| 2.17   | Branches (black solid line) on the trellis that results in $d_{\text{free}}^2$ for CAC on QPSK constellation shown in Fig. 2.16.                            | 30   |

| 2.18 | Branches (black solid line) on the trellis that results in $d_{\text{free}}^2$ for CAC on 16QAM using constellation shown in Fig. 2.1.  | 31 |
|------|---|----|
| 2.19 | 16-QAM signal constellation with bit assignment that produces $d_{\text{free}}^2 = 20E_{c,s}$ .   | 32 |
| 2.20 | 16-QAM signal constellation with bit assignment that produces $d_{\text{free}}^2 = 28E_{c,s}$ .   | 33 |
| 2.21 | 16-QAM signal constellation with bit assignment that produces $d_{\text{free}}^2 = 28E_{c,s}$ .   | 33 |
| 2.22 | Branches (black solid line) on the trellis that results in $d_{\text{free}}^2$ for CAC on 16QAM using bit assignment shown in Fig. 2.20 | 34 |
| 2.23 | 64-QAM signal constellation with Sequential Bits Assignment that produces $d_{\text{free}}^2 = 28E_{c,s}$ .                             | 36 |
| 2.24 | Schematic diagram for rate $\frac{k}{k+1}$ using Sequential Input Encoding (SIE)  | 38 |
| 2.25 | Schematic diagram for rate $\frac{k}{k+1}$ using Partial Parallel Encoding (PPE)  | 39 |
| 2.26 | Trellis structure for rate 2/3 CAC (SIE) using QPSK constellation   | 42 |
| 3.1  | BER and SER Curve for rate $\frac{1}{2}$ SPTC with target point $t = 0$ on a QPSK constellation for the shape shown in Fig. 2.6.        | 49 |
| 3.2  | BER and SER Curve for rate $\frac{1}{2}$ SPTC with target point $t = 0$ on a QPSK constellation for shape shown in Fig. 2.10.           | 50 |
| 3.3  | BER and SER Curve for rate $\frac{1}{2}$ SPTC with target point $t = 0$ on a 16QAM constellation for shape shown in Fig. 2.1.           | 51 |
| 3.4  | BER and SER Curve for rate $\frac{1}{2}$ SPTC with target point $t = 0$ on a 64QAM constellation for shape shown in Fig. 2.3.           | 52 |
| 3.5  | BER and SER of rate $\frac{1}{2}$ CAC using QPSK signal constellation and bit as-<br>signment shown in Fig. 2.6.                        | 53 |
| 3.6  | BER and SER of rate $\frac{1}{2}$ CAC using QPSK signal constellation and bit as-<br>signment shown in Fig. 2.16.                       | 54 |
| 3.7  | BER and SER for rate 1/2 CAC using 16QAM constellation and bit assignment shown in Fig. 2.1.  | 55 |
| 3.8  | Ber and SER of rate $\frac{1}{2}$ CAC using 16QAM constellation and bit assignment shown in Fig. 2.19.                                  | 56 |
| 3.9  | Ber and SER of rate $\frac{1}{2}$ CAC using 16QAM constellation and bit assignment shown in Fig. 2.20.                                  | 57 |

| 3.10 | Ber and SER of rate $\frac{1}{2}$ CAC using 64QAM constellation and bit assignment shown in Fig. 2.23.  | 58 |
|------|---|----|
| 3.11 | Ber and SER of rate $\frac{1}{2}$ CAC using 256QAM constellation and Sequential Bit Assignment.   | 59 |
| 3.12 | Comparison between rate $\frac{1}{2}$ Constellation Arithmetic Code and SPTC on a QPSK constellation.   | 60 |
| 3.13 | Comparison of performance between rate $\frac{1}{2}$ Constellation Arithmetic Code<br>and SPTC on a QPSK constellation.                                   | 61 |
| 3.14 | Comparison of performance between rate $\frac{1}{2}$ Constellation Arithmetic Code<br>and SPTC on a 16QAM constellation.                                  | 62 |
| 3.15 | Comparison of performance between rate $\frac{1}{2}$ Constellation Arithmetic Code<br>and SPTC on a 64QAM constellation.                                  | 63 |
| 3.16 | Comparison of performance for rate $\frac{1}{2}$ CAC using QPSK signal constellation<br>and bit assignment shown in Fig. 2.16 with various trellis depths | 64 |
| 3.17 | BER and SER curve of rate $\frac{2}{3}$ CAC (SIE) on a QPSK constellation   | 65 |
| 3.18 | BER and SER curve of rate $\frac{3}{4}$ CAC (SIE) on a QPSK constellation   | 66 |
| 3.19 | BER and SER curve of rate $\frac{2}{3}$ CAC (SIE) on a 16QAM constellation  | 66 |
| 3.20 | BER and SER curve of rate $\frac{3}{4}$ CAC (SIE) on a 16QAM constellation  | 67 |
| 3.21 | BER and SER curve of rate $\frac{2}{3}$ CAC (SIE) on a 64QAM constellation  | 67 |
| 3.22 | BER and SER curve of rate $\frac{2}{3}$ CAC (PPE) on a QPSK constellation   | 68 |
| 3.23 | BER and SER curve of rate $\frac{3}{4}$ CAC (PPE) on a QPSK constellation   | 69 |
| 3.24 | BER and SER curve of rate $\frac{2}{3}$ CAC (PPE) on a 16QAM constellation  | 69 |
| 3.25 | BER and SER curve of rate $\frac{3}{4}$ CAC (PPE) on a 16QAM constellation  | 70 |
| 3.26 | BER and SER curve of rate $\frac{2}{3}$ CAC (PPE) on a 64QAM constellation  | 70 |
| 4.1  | Trellis structure for Constellation Arithmetic Code using QPSK constellation<br>for $\alpha = 3$ and $N_s = 13$   | 76 |
| 4.2  | Branches (black solid line) on the trellis that results in $d_{\text{free}}^2$ for CAC on QPSK constellation shown in Fig. 3.6.                           | 77 |
| 4.3  | Simulation results for rate $1/2$ CAC-16QAM using different number of states.   | 79 |

xii

# ACRONYMS

- ECC Error Correction Coding
- AWGN Additive White Gaussian Noise
- BER Bit Error Rate
- SER Symbol Error Rate
- SNR Signal to Noise Ratio
- LDPC Low Density Parity Check
- QAM Quadrature Amplitude Modulation
- QPSK Quadrature Phase Shift Keying
- PSK Phase Shift Keying
- SPTC Signal Point Target Code
- SC Shape Code
- CAC Constellation Arithmetic Code
- SIE Sequential Input Encoding
- PPE Partial Parallel Encoding
- TCM Trellis Coded Modulation
- IDE Integrated Development Environment

# CHAPTER 1 INTRODUCTION

# 1.1 Overview

Error correction coding is the means of detecting and correcting errors induced by communication channels on received data by utilizing the properties of redundant data added with the message data for transmission. Since Shannon's channel coding theorem [1] in 1948, studies to find good codes which achieve near channel capacity have been conducted. Finding a code of lower complexity that achieves Shannon channel capacity is of primary interest in the field of error correction coding. Those studies led to the discovery of some good codes, such as Low Density Parity Check (LDPC) [2], Turbo Codes [3] and Polar Codes [4]. The redundant bits of error correcting codes increase the ability to detect and correct errors but reduce the rate of transmission. Ungerboeck proposed a coding scheme Trellis Coded Modulation (TCM) [5] which incorporates error correction coding and modulation as a single unit to improve the information transmission rate. In [5], Ungerboek used a convolutional encoder followed by mapping into the signal constellation to encode and a sequential decoder to decode TCM. A new coding algorithm named Shape Code (SC) was proposed in [6] and extended in [7], which takes into account a shape or predefined path in the signal constellation. That shape was used to encode input symbols to generate parity symbols. Like TCM, SC employs error correction coding within the signal space. The work of this thesis is to study, extend and evaluate multiple attributes of the encoding algorithm [7] in simulation.

## 1.2 Literature Review

The concept of shapes formed within the decoder and how these shapes affect the decoding capability was introduced in [8]. Using the concept of shape, Sodha devised

a rate 1/2 systematic code (Shape Code) on QPSK constellation [6]. A square shape within the signal space was formed by selecting appropriate points from the constellations. This collection of points was used to encode input symbols by calculating the numbers of clockwise 90 degree rotations to go from the input symbol to a point from that collection. This collection of points was later named as target points in [7] where the idea of Shape Code was extended for a larger constellation (16QAM). In [7], alongside with the extension of Shape Code for a larger constellation, a state variable was introduced which enabled the encoder to form a trellis by utilizing input symbols and target points. The trellis structure allowed for trellis based decoding. From [7], it can be seen that for shape code, a standard Viterbi decoder increases the coding gain compared to the performance in [6]. It will be also shown that the coding gain depends on the free Euclidean distance on the trellis and by increasing the distance is possible to achieve more coding gain.

#### 1.3 Thesis Objectives

The primary goal of this thesis is to study and generalize Signal Point Target Code (SPTC). The performance of the codes will be measured in Bit Error Rate (BER) and Symbol Error Rate (SER) and will be compared with the results of uncoded modulations. The objectives of this thesis are:

- 1. Generalize the encoder which is already proposed for QPSK and 16QAM, to other QAM signal constellation.
- 2. Study the performance of the proposed code as shapes are modified.
- 3. Study encoding under different coding rates.
- 4. Study the performance of the encoder for the different number of states.
- 5. Study the effect on the performance of the code due to the free Euclidean distance in trellis to gain some understanding of the theoretical coding gain.

A secondary objective of this thesis is to compare the simulation speed using between MATLAB, Python, and Julia to determine which tool is more suitable for error correction studies.

## 1.4 Chapter Outlines

The chapter organization for this thesis is as follows:

Chapter 2 presents the background of SPTC. At the beginning of chapter 2, the encoding operation of SPTC is by introducing appropriate notations. Using trellis structure, the free Euclidean distance related to the shape is calculated to show that the performance of SPTC depends on the employed shape. How the codes can be decoded using the standard Viterbi algorithm is also described in this chapter. Following the motivation to increase free Euclidean distance for codes by searching for the best shape, an alternative of SPTC called Constellation Arithmetic Code (CAC) which depends on the bit assignment rather than the shape is introduced. A solution for bit assignment for CAC in the 16QAM and 64QAM signal constellation is presented that provides better coding gain compared to the performances of the shapes for encoding SPTC explored in this thesis. At the end of this chapter, two methods for increasing the rate of CAC are proposed.

Chapter 3 starts with the required calculations for simulating the performance of the proposed codes using an AWGN channel. How the noise is generated using the variance obtained for a given constellation is described here. The equations of the probability of symbol error for both theory and simulation are provided. Later in this chapter, simulation results for SPTC and CAC are presented, comparison between the performances of SPTC and CAC are made and the performances of rate 2/3 and rate 3/4 codes for CAC are presented. Finally, this chapter ends with the comparison between the runtime of MATLAB, Python, and Julia to determine a suitable language for error correction coding study.

In chapter 4, the idea of how increasing the number of states can increase the free Euclidean distance and therefore increase the coding gain has been explored. An approach for increasing the number of states and the free Euclidean distances is proposed. For rate 1/2 CAC using QPSK and 16QAM constellation, a list for the different number of states

and the associated free Euclidean distances is provided. However, the proposed approach failed to provide any coding gain for the increment of the number of states in simulations. So this chapter is presented in this thesis in order to provide an insight for future researches.

Chapter 5 concludes the thesis by discussing the findings for SPTC and CAC and by pointing out areas for possible future research. The appendix contains all of the codes written for the simulations in this thesis.

## CHAPTER 2

# SIGNAL POINT TARGET CODE

The focus of this chapter is the Signal Point Target Code (SPTC). In this chapter, the encoding operations of SPTC are explained first. Then, a modified version of SPTC is presented and using that modified version two methods for changing the rate of codes are proposed.

Let M denote the number of points in a digital constellation and  $n = \log_2 M$  be the number of bits per symbol. Let  $\{b_0, b_1, b_2, ...\}$  denote a sequence of randomly generated bits where  $b \in \{0, 1\}$ . At the *i*th symbol interval, n bits are stacked into a binary vector  $\mathbf{b}_i = [b_{ni} \ b_{ni+1} \dots \ b_{ni+n-1}]^T$ .

Let S be the set of points in the signal constellation and  $\phi : \{0, 1\}^n \to S$  be a bijective mapping from *n* dimensional binary vector **b** to a point in the signal space  $S \in S$ ,

$$S = \phi(\mathbf{b}). \tag{2.1}$$

 $\phi$  is the bit assignment operation in the signal constellation. In this thesis, for SPTC gray code indexing has been used in all the signal constellations. However, for a modified version of SPTC called Constellation Arithmetic Code, bit assignment operations beside gray code indexing are used to evaluate coding gain.

#### 2.1 Encode

Let  $\psi : \mathbb{S} \to \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}$  be a bijective mapping between points in the signal constellation Sand an integer m where  $\psi$  assigns each point in the signal constellation to a unique integer index  $m \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}$ . In this thesis, the integer index m is equal to the decimal representation of the binary vector that has been assigned to that point by  $\phi$ . The set of such integers will be denoted as the set of signal space index  $\mathcal{I}$ . For example, in the signal constellation shown in figure 2.1,  $\phi$  maps binary vectors  $[0 \ 0 \ 1 \ 0]$  and  $[1 \ 1 \ 0 \ 1]$  to points (-3,3) and (1,-1) while  $\psi$  maps the point  $(-3,3) \in \mathbb{S}$  to the integer index 2 and the point  $(1,-1) \in \mathbb{S}$  to the integer index 13.

Under this encoding scheme, let an "addition" operation  $\oplus : \mathcal{I} \times \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0} \to \mathcal{I}$  in the signal constellation, such that  $s_{\text{new}} = s_i \oplus j$  moves from the point  $s_i$  in the signal space to a new point  $s_{\text{new}}$  by the amount j following a predefined path, where  $s_{\text{new}}, s_i \in \mathcal{I}$  and  $j \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}$ . For example, for the path defined by blue arrows in the signal constellation shown in Fig 2.1,  $7 \oplus 6 = 8$  because from point 7 moving 6 steps along the path takes to point 8. In this thesis, the predefined path which is followed by the  $\oplus$  operator is defined as *shape*. Any shape can be used for encoding as long as the shape goes through all of the points in the signal constellation and the shape goes through each point only once. The total number points which are used to form the shape is M. The addition defined by  $\oplus$  associated with the shape shown in Fig. 2.1 is listed in Table 2.1.



Fig. 2.1: 16-QAM signal constellation with a shape indicated by blue arrows.

|   |          |    |    |    |    |    |    | j  |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|---|----------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
|   | $\oplus$ | 0  | 1  | 2  | 3  | 4  | 5  | 6  | 7  | 8  | 9  | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 |
|   | 0        | 0  | 2  | 6  | 14 | 10 | 11 | 15 | 7  | 3  | 1  | 5  | 13 | 9  | 8  | 12 | 4  |
|   | 1        | 1  | 5  | 13 | 9  | 8  | 12 | 4  | 0  | 2  | 6  | 14 | 10 | 11 | 15 | 7  | 3  |
|   | 2        | 2  | 6  | 14 | 10 | 11 | 15 | 7  | 3  | 1  | 5  | 13 | 9  | 8  | 12 | 4  | 0  |
|   | 3        | 3  | 1  | 5  | 13 | 9  | 8  | 12 | 4  | 0  | 2  | 6  | 14 | 10 | 1  | 15 | 7  |
|   | 4        | 4  | 0  | 2  | 6  | 14 | 10 | 11 | 15 | 7  | 3  | 1  | 5  | 13 | 9  | 8  | 12 |
|   | 5        | 5  | 13 | 9  | 8  | 12 | 4  | 0  | 2  | 6  | 14 | 10 | 11 | 15 | 7  | 3  | 1  |
|   | 6        | 6  | 14 | 10 | 11 | 15 | 7  | 3  | 1  | 5  | 13 | 9  | 8  | 12 | 4  | 0  | 2  |
|   | 7        | 7  | 3  | 1  | 5  | 13 | 9  | 8  | 12 | 4  | 0  | 2  | 6  | 14 | 10 | 11 | 15 |
| s | 8        | 8  | 12 | 4  | 0  | 2  | 6  | 14 | 10 | 11 | 15 | 7  | 3  | 1  | 5  | 13 | 9  |
|   | 9        | 9  | 8  | 12 | 4  | 0  | 2  | 6  | 14 | 10 | 11 | 15 | 7  | 3  | 1  | 5  | 13 |
|   | 10       | 10 | 11 | 15 | 7  | 3  | 1  | 5  | 13 | 9  | 8  | 12 | 4  | 0  | 2  | 6  | 14 |
|   | 11       | 11 | 15 | 7  | 3  | 1  | 5  | 13 | 9  | 8  | 12 | 4  | 0  | 2  | 6  | 14 | 10 |
|   | 12       | 12 | 4  | 0  | 2  | 6  | 14 | 10 | 11 | 15 | 7  | 3  | 1  | 5  | 13 | 9  | 8  |
|   | 13       | 13 | 9  | 8  | 12 | 4  | 0  | 2  | 6  | 14 | 10 | 11 | 15 | 7  | 3  | 1  | 5  |
|   | 14       | 14 | 10 | 11 | 15 | 7  | 3  | 1  | 5  | 13 | 9  | 8  | 12 | 4  | 0  | 2  | 6  |
|   | 15       | 15 | 7  | 3  | 1  | 5  | 13 | 9  | 8  | 12 | 4  | 0  | 2  | 6  | 14 | 10 | 11 |

Table 2.1: Input output relation table for  $\oplus$  where column s is input symbol and row j is the number of steps along the predefined path.

The SPTC uses a target point  $t_k$  selected from a sequence of target points within the signal space to calculate the required number of steps to go from any point  $s_v$  to that target point. The sequence of target points may consist of a single point (a sequence of length 1) or multiple points. If the sequence of target points consists of multiple points, then at each *i* the target point  $t_k$  is time varying with  $t_k = t_i \pmod{u}$ , where *u* is the length of the sequence of target points. In this thesis, fixed target point t = 0 has been used in all encoding even though the target point can follow a shape by selecting appropriate

points from the signal constellation as the sequence of target points. For example, points  $\{2, 6, 14, 10, 11, 9, 8, 12, 4, 0, 1, 3, 2\}$  are selected as sequence of target points so that the target point traces a square shape shown in Fig. 2.2.



Fig. 2.2: 16-QAM signal constellation with a square shape indicated by blue arrows which can be traced by target point.

Let  $\ominus: \mathcal{I} \times \mathcal{I} \to \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}$  be defined as the operation  $r = t_k \ominus s_v$  that calculates the number of steps r along the path necessary to move from point  $s_v$  to a point  $t_k$ , where,  $t_k, s_v \in \mathcal{I}$ and  $r \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}$ . For example, for the shape shown in Fig. 2.1,  $4 \ominus 5 = 5$  because from point 5 in the signal space, it takes 5 steps along the path indicated by the blue arrows to reach point 4. For fixed target points t = 0, t = 1, ..., t = 15, the required number of movements from each point in the signal constellation along the path shown in Fig. 2.1 is listed in the

## Table 2.2.

|   |           |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    | a  |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|---|-----------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
|   | $\ominus$ | 0  | 1  | 2  | 3  | 4  | 5  | 6  | 7  | 8  | 9  | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 |
|   | 0         | 0  | 7  | 15 | 8  | 1  | 6  | 14 | 9  | 3  | 4  | 12 | 11 | 2  | 5  | 13 | 10 |
|   | 1         | 9  | 0  | 8  | 1  | 10 | 15 | 7  | 2  | 12 | 13 | 5  | 4  | 11 | 14 | 6  | 3  |
|   | 2         | 1  | 8  | 0  | 9  | 2  | 7  | 15 | 10 | 4  | 5  | 13 | 12 | 3  | 6  | 14 | 11 |
|   | 3         | 8  | 15 | 7  | 0  | 9  | 14 | 6  | 1  | 11 | 12 | 4  | 3  | 10 | 13 | 5  | 2  |
|   | 4         | 15 | 6  | 14 | 7  | 0  | 5  | 13 | 8  | 2  | 3  | 11 | 10 | 1  | 4  | 12 | 9  |
|   | 5         | 10 | 1  | 9  | 2  | 11 | 0  | 8  | 3  | 13 | 14 | 6  | 5  | 12 | 15 | 7  | 4  |
|   | 6         | 2  | 9  | 1  | 10 | 3  | 8  | 0  | 11 | 5  | 6  | 14 | 13 | 4  | 7  | 15 | 12 |
|   | 7         | 7  | 14 | 6  | 15 | 8  | 13 | 5  | 0  | 10 | 11 | 3  | 2  | 9  | 12 | 4  | 1  |
| t | 8         | 13 | 4  | 12 | 5  | 14 | 3  | 11 | 6  | 0  | 1  | 9  | 8  | 15 | 2  | 10 | 7  |
|   | 9         | 12 | 3  | 11 | 4  | 13 | 2  | 10 | 5  | 15 | 0  | 8  | 7  | 14 | 1  | 9  | 6  |
|   | 10        | 4  | 11 | 3  | 12 | 5  | 10 | 2  | 13 | 7  | 8  | 0  | 15 | 6  | 9  | 1  | 14 |
|   | 11        | 5  | 12 | 4  | 13 | 6  | 11 | 3  | 14 | 8  | 9  | 1  | 0  | 7  | 10 | 2  | 15 |
|   | 12        | 14 | 5  | 13 | 6  | 15 | 4  | 12 | 7  | 1  | 2  | 10 | 9  | 0  | 3  | 11 | 8  |
|   | 13        | 11 | 2  | 10 | 4  | 12 | 1  | 9  | 4  | 14 | 15 | 7  | 6  | 13 | 0  | 8  | 5  |
|   | 14        | 3  | 10 | 2  | 11 | 4  | 9  | 1  | 12 | 6  | 7  | 15 | 14 | 5  | 8  | 0  | 13 |
|   | 15        | 6  | 13 | 5  | 14 | 7  | 12 | 4  | 15 | 9  | 10 | 2  | 1  | 8  | 11 | 3  | 0  |

Table 2.2: Input output relation table for  $\ominus$  where column t is the input target point and row a is the input current point in the signal space.

For 64 QAM, a shape similar to Fig. 2.1 is shown by the blue arrows in Fig. 2.3. For this shape, Tables 2.3, 2.4, 2.5, 2.6 contain the outputs of the  $\oplus$  operator and the required number of movement to reach fixed target point t = 0 from every point in the signal constellation is listed in Tables 2.7 and 2.8.



Fig. 2.3: 64-QAM signal constellation with a shape indicated by blue arrows.

|     |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    | j  |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|-----|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| €   | • | 0  | 1  | 2  | 3  | 4  | 5  | 6  | 7  | 8  | 9  | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 | 31 |
| 0   |   | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 |
| 1   |   | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  |
| 2   |   | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  |
| 3   |   | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 |
| 4   |   | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  |
| 5   |   | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 |
| 6   |   | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  |
| 7   |   | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  |
| 8   |   | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 |
| 9   |   | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  |
| 10  | C | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  |
| 1   | 1 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 |
| 15  | 2 | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  |
| 13  | 3 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 |
| 14  | 1 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 |
| s 1 | 5 | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  |
| 10  | 3 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 |
| 17  | 7 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 |
| 18  | 8 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 |
| 19  | 9 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 |
| 20  | D | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 |
| 2   | 1 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 |
| 25  | 2 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 |
| 23  | 3 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 |
| 2   | 1 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 |
| 2   | 5 | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 |
| 20  | 3 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 |
| 2   | 7 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 |
| 28  | 3 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 |
| 29  | 9 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 |
| 30  | ) | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 |
| 3   | 1 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  |

Table 2.3: Input output relation table for  $\oplus$  where column s is input symbol and row j is the number of steps along the predefined path.

|   |          |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    | j  |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|---|----------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
|   | $\oplus$ | 32 | 33 | 34 | 35 | 36 | 37 | 38 | 39 | 40 | 41 | 42 | 43 | 44 | 45 | 46 | 47 | 48 | 49 | 50 | 51 | 52 | 53 | 54 | 55 | 56 | 57 | 58 | 59 | 60 | 61 | 62 | 63 |
|   | 0        | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  |
|   | 1        | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  |
|   | 2        | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  |
|   | 3        | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 |
|   | 4        | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  |
|   | 5        | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 |
|   | 6        | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 |
|   | 7        | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  |
|   | 8        | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 |
|   | 9        | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  |
|   | 10       | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  |
|   | 11       | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 |
|   | 12       | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  |
|   | 13       | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 |
|   | 14       | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 |
| s | 15       | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  |
|   | 16       | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 |
|   | 17       | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 |
|   | 18       | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 |
|   | 19       | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 |
|   | 20       | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 |
|   | 21       | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 |
|   | 22       | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 |
|   | 23       | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 |
|   | 24       | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 |
|   | 25       | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  |
|   | 26       | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 |
|   | 27       | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 |
|   | 28       | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 |
|   | 29       | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 |
|   | 30       | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 |
|   | 31       | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 |

Table 2.4: Input output relation table for  $\oplus$  where column s is input symbol and row j is the number of steps along the predefined path.

|          |    |    |    |    |    |        |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    | j  |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|----------|----|----|----|----|----|--------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| $\oplus$ | 0  | 1  | 2  | 3  | 4  | 5      | 6  | 7  | 8  | 9  | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 | 31 |
| 32       | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24     | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 |
| 33       | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16     | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 |
| 34       | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19     | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 |
| 35       | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27     | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 |
| 36       | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21     | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 |
| 37       | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29     | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 |
| 38       | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30     | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 |
| 39       | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22     | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 |
| 40       | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8      | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 |
| 41       | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48     | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 |
| 42       | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51     | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 |
| 43       | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11     | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 |
| 44       | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53     | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 |
| 45       | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13     | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 |
| 46       | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14     | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 |
| s 47     | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54     | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 |
| 48       | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4      | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 |
| 49       | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40     | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 |
| 50       | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43     | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 |
| 51       | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1      | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 |
| 52       | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45     | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 |
| 53       | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7      | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 |
| 54       | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | $^{2}$ | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 |
| 55       | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46     | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 |
| 56       | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0      | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 |
| 57       | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56     | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 |
| 58       | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59     | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 |
| 59       | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3      | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 |
| 60       | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61     | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 |
| 61       | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5      | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 |
| 62       | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6      | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 |
| 63       | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62     | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 |

Table 2.5: Input output relation table for  $\oplus$  where column s is input symbol and row j is the number of steps along the predefined path.

|     |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    | j  |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|-----|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| €   | Ð | 32 | 33 | 34 | 35 | 36 | 37 | 38 | 39 | 40 | 41 | 42 | 43 | 44 | 45 | 46 | 47 | 48 | 49 | 50 | 51 | 52 | 53 | 54 | 55 | 56 | 57 | 58 | 59 | 60 | 61 | 62 | 63 |
| 3   | 2 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 |
| 3   | 3 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 |
| 3   | 4 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 |
| 3   | 5 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 |
| 3   | 6 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 |
| 3   | 7 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 |
| 3   | 8 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 |
| 3   | 9 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 |
| 4   | 0 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 |
| 4   | 1 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 |
| 4   | 2 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 |
| 4   | 3 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 |
| 4   | 4 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 |
| 4   | 5 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 |
| 4   | 6 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 |
| s 4 | 7 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 |
| 4   | 8 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 |
| 4   | 9 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 |
| 5   | 0 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 |
| 5   | 1 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 |
| 5   | 2 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 |
| 5   | 3 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 |
| 5   | 4 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 |
| 5   | 5 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 |
| 5   | 6 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 |
| 5   | 7 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 |
| 5   | 8 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 |
| 5   | 9 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 | 62 | 54 | 22 | 30 | 14 | 6  | 2  | 10 | 26 | 18 | 50 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 |
| 6   | 0 | 58 | 42 | 34 | 35 | 43 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 |
| 6   | 1 | 59 | 51 | 19 | 27 | 11 | 3  | 1  | 9  | 25 | 17 | 49 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 |
| 6   | 2 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 | 63 | 47 | 39 | 38 | 46 |
| 6   | 3 | 57 | 41 | 33 | 32 | 40 | 56 | 48 | 16 | 24 | 8  | 0  | 4  | 12 | 28 | 20 | 52 | 60 | 44 | 36 | 37 | 45 | 61 | 53 | 21 | 29 | 13 | 5  | 7  | 15 | 31 | 23 | 55 |

Table 2.6: Input output relation table for  $\oplus$  where column s is input symbol and row j is the number of steps along the predefined path.

|   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |   |    |    |    |    |    |    | a  |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|---|---|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
|   | θ | 0 | 1  | 2  | 3  | 4  | 5  | 6  | 7  | 8 | 9  | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16 | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 | 31 |
| t | 0 | 0 | 15 | 31 | 16 | 63 | 48 | 32 | 47 | 1 | 14 | 30 | 17 | 62 | 49 | 33 | 46 | 3  | 12 | 28 | 19 | 60 | 51 | 35 | 44 | 2  | 13 | 29 | 18 | 61 | 50 | 34 | 45 |

Table 2.7: Input output relation table for  $\ominus$  where column t is the input target point and row a is the input current point in the signal space.

|     |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    | a  |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|-----|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| e   | э | 32 | 33 | 34 | 35 | 36 | 37 | 38 | 39 | 40 | 41 | 42 | 43 | 44 | 45 | 46 | 47 | 48 | 49 | 50 | 51 | 52 | 53 | 54 | 55 | 56 | 57 | 58 | 59 | 60 | 61 | 62 | 63 |
| t ( | р | 7  | 8  | 24 | 23 | 56 | 55 | 39 | 40 | 6  | 9  | 25 | 22 | 57 | 54 | 38 | 41 | 4  | 11 | 27 | 20 | 59 | 52 | 36 | 43 | 5  | 10 | 26 | 21 | 58 | 53 | 37 | 42 |

Table 2.8: Input output relation table for  $\ominus$  where column t is the input target point and row a is the input current point in the signal space.

The  $\oplus$  and  $\ominus$  operations can be viewed on an M sided regular polygon where the vertices are labeled in clockwise order as the points of the path defined in the signal constellation. For example, the path from Fig 2.1 can be mapped to the vertices of hexadecagon shown in Fig. 2.4. Now  $7 \oplus 6 = 8$  means moving 6 edges from vertex labeled as 7 in the clockwise direction will lead to vertex 8 and  $4 \oplus 5 = 5$  means there are 5 edges between vertex 5 and 4 in the clockwise direction.



Fig. 2.4: Representation  $\oplus$  and  $\ominus$  operation on a M sided regular polygon.

The encoder has a state variable  $j_i \in \{0, 1, 2, ..., M - 1\}$  which determines the location along the path in the trellis after encoding for each time *i*. At each time *i*, the path starts at state variable  $j_i$  and ends at  $j_{i+1}$ . The state variable  $j_{i+1}$  is calculated by

$$j_{i+1} = j_i + r_i \pmod{M}.$$
 (2.2)

The state variable accumulates parity symbol index  $r_i$  generated at time step i and the previous state  $j_i$  to determine where the path is going to end at that time step. The endpoint for a branch depends on the input symbol  $S_i$ , the state variable  $j_i$  and the target point t. For a fixed  $j_i$ , a different combination of  $S_i$  and t will lead to a different endpoint  $j_{i+1}$ . So at each i,  $j_i$  and  $j_{i+1}$  determine which branch of the trellis is taken during the encoding thus decides the direction of the path in the trellis. For this encoder, the number of states is equal to the number of points in the signal constellation.

For a given shape in the signal constellation and  $\{t_0, t_1, t_2, t_3, \dots\}$  as the sequence of target points, the encoding operation for SPTC at every symbol time *i* is given in Algorithm 1.

| Algorithm 1 Signal Point Ta                | rget Code Encoding   |
|--|--|
| 1: input: symbol $S_i$ , previou           | s state variable $j_i$                                       |
| 2: $s_i \leftarrow \psi(S_i)$              | compute the integer index of $S_i$                           |
| 3: $a_i \leftarrow s_i \oplus j_i$         |  |
| 4: determine the target point              | $t_k$ where $k = i \pmod{u}$                                 |
| 5: $r_i \leftarrow t_k \ominus a_i$        |  |
| 6: $j_{i+1} \leftarrow j_i + r_i \pmod{M}$ | update the state after encoding                              |
| 7: $R_i \leftarrow \psi^{-1}(r_i)$         | compute the parity symbol $R_i$ from the integer index $r_i$ |
| 8: return parity symbol $R_i$ ar           | nd state variable $j_{i+1}$                                  |

Associated with each branch at the time *i*, there is an input symbol  $S_i$  and parity symbol  $R_i$ . An example of trellis using QPSK constellation is shown in Fig. 2.5. In this trellis all of the possible branches at the time *i* that can go from every initial state  $j_i$  to every final state  $j_{i+1}$  is represented by lines. Starting from the initial state 1, the branch which goes to the final state 2 is presented by a black solid line. The input symbol  $S_i$  and parity symbol  $R_i$  associated with this branch is presented on top of the branch labeled as  $S_i/R_i$  in the figure. Since the endpoint of each branch in the trellis depends on the state variable and the state variable depends on the target point, the trellis is time varying if the sequence of target points contains multiple points. Initially, the encoder starts at state  $j_0 = 0$  and with each increment of time *i* it creates a path which allows a trellis based decoder to determine the sequence of transmitted symbols. At each *i*, the encoder output is the input symbol  $S_i$  and parity symbol  $R_i$  which makes the encoder of rate 1/2.



Fig. 2.5: Example of trellis structure using a QPSK constellation.

## 2.2 Decode

To decode SPTC, a trellis is formed in which for every symbol time *i* all of the branches that can go from every possible initial state  $j_i$  to every possible final state  $j_{i+1}$  are calculated. Those branches store their corresponding input symbols and parity symbols. For QPSK signal constellation with the shape shown in Fig. 2.6 and a fixed target point  $t = \{0\}$ , the trellis is shown in Fig. 2.7, where each branch from state  $j_i$  to state  $j_{i+1}$  is labeled as  $S_i/R_i$ which corresponds to the branch input symbol and parity symbol.



Fig. 2.6: QPSK signal constellation with a shape indicated by blue arrows.



Fig. 2.7: Trellis structure for SPTC using QPSK constellation for fixed target point t = 0and shape shown in Fig. 2.6.

In order to decode using the formed trellis, a standard Viterbi algorithm [9] has been implemented which uses squared Euclidean distance between branch input symbol  $S_i$  and received symbol  $\hat{S}_i$  plus squared Euclidean distance between branch parity symbol  $R_i$  and received parity symbol  $\hat{R}_i$  as branch metric

$$\mu_t = d_e^2(S_i, \hat{S}_i) + d_e^2(R_i, \hat{R}_i).$$
(2.3)

Here squared Euclidean distance is used to calculate branch metric which is also a measure of the energy difference between the symbols. The Viterbi decoder starts at all zero-state and the trellis depth of the Viterbi algorithm is 10. Simulation results for the proposed code using different trellis depth in the Viterbi decoder are presented in Fig. 3.16. From Fig. 3.16, it can be seen that the performance of the decoder remains almost the same after a certain trellis depth. So trellis depth of 10 for the Viterbi algorithm has been selected to decode. For each state  $j_{i+1}$  at time *i* branch metric  $\mu_t$  is calculated for all the possible branches originated from each state  $j_i$  at time i - 1 and the branch metric added with the path metric  $M(j_i)$  for each surviving path at time i - 1 to get path metric  $M(j_{i+1})$  and the path to state  $j_{i+1}$  with the minimum path metric is selected as the surviving path at time *i*. The optimum output sequence is the path which has the minimum path metric through the trellis.

#### 2.3 Free Euclidean Distance

Similar to convolutional codes and TCM, the performance of SPTC in terms of coding gain depends on the smallest distance between any two paths which diverge and then merge into the same state in the trellis. This smallest distance is also called the free Euclidean distance [9] and is denoted by  $d_{\text{free}}^2$ . The distance between these two paths is the sum of squared Euclidean distances in the signal constellation between the input symbols associated with these paths and the parity symbols associated with these paths. In Fig. 2.8, the Euclidean distances between two pair of points are shown by blue lines where the average energy per coded symbol is  $E_{c,s}$ . For this constellation,  $d_e(0,1) = d_e(3,1) = d_e(2,0) =$  $d_e(2,3) = 2\sqrt{E_{c,s}}$  and  $d_e(2,1) = d_e(0,3) = \sqrt{8E_{c,s}}$ . For example, for the trellis shown in Fig. 2.7, among all of these diverging and then merging paths, the pair of paths which has the smallest distance is indicated by black solid lines in Fig. 2.9. In Fig. 2.9, starting from state 0 one path goes through state 0 which has input symbol 0 and parity symbol 0 while the other path diverges to state 1 with input symbol 1 and parity symbol 1. Then the second path merges back to state 0 with input symbol 0 and parity symbol 3. So using the Euclidean distances from the signal constellation shown in Fig. 2.8, the free Euclidean distance

$$d_{\text{free}}^2 = d_e^2(0,1) + d_e^2(0,1) + d_e^2(0,0) + d_e^2(0,3)$$
$$= 4E_{c,s} + 4E_{c,s} + 0 + 8E_{c,s}$$
$$= 16E_{c,s}.$$



Fig. 2.8: QPSK constellation.



Fig. 2.9: Branches (black solid line) on the trellis that results in  $d_{\text{free}}^2$  for SPTC on QPSK for fixed target point t = 0 and shape shown in Fig. 2.6.

For a given bit assignment in the signal constellation, different shapes result in different trellis structure. So each shape corresponds with it's own  $d_{\text{free}}^2$  and from the simulation results presented in chapter 3, it can be seen that the shape with larger  $d_{\text{free}}^2$  has better coding gain than other shapes. For example, the trellis and the pair of paths that produces free Euclidean distance for the shape shown in Fig. 2.10 are presented in Figs. 2.11 and 2.12. For this shape, the free Euclidean distance on the trellis using the signal constellation from Fig. 2.8 is

$$d_{\text{free}}^2 = d_e^2(2,1) + d_e^2(2,3) + d_e^2(1,2) + d_e^2(2,1)$$
$$= 8E_{c,s} + 4E_{c,s} + 8E_{c,s} + 8E_{c,s}$$
$$= 28E_{c,s}$$



Fig. 2.10: QPSK signal constellation with a shape indicated by blue arrows.


Fig. 2.11: Trellis structure for SPTC using QPSK constellation for fixed target point t = 0and shape shown in Fig. 2.10.



Fig. 2.12: Branches (black solid line) on the trellis that results in  $d_{\text{free}}^2$  for SPTC on QPSK for fixed target point t = 0 and shape shown in Fig. 2.10.

By rotating the target point after each input signal point does not yield an improved coding gain because the relative distance between branches within a given code trellis is the same. So a constant target point t = 0 has been used in this thesis to encode the input symbols. For 16QAM constellation, the shape and bit assignment in the signal constellation shown in Fig. 2.1 and fixed target point t = 0, the pair of paths which constitutes the free Euclidean distance is shown in Fig. 2.13 by black solid lines. For this shape, the free Euclidean distance is

$$d_{\text{free}}^2 = d_e^2(4, 13) + d_e^2(1, 5) + d_e^2(0, 0) + d_e^2(15, 11)$$
$$= 8E_{c,s} + 4E_{c,s} + 0 + 4E_{c,s}$$
$$= 16E_{c,s}$$



Fig. 2.13: Branches (black solid line) on the trellis that results in  $d_{\text{free}}^2$  for SPTC on 16QAM for fixed target point t = 0 and shape shown in Fig. 2.1.

#### 2.4 Generalization to any M-ary QAM

As the performance of SPTC depends on  $d_{\text{free}}^2$ , finding the shape and the symbol assignment in the signal constellation corresponding to that shape which has the largest free Euclidean distance will result in maximum possible coding gain. However, for a signal constellation of M points, there are M! possible ways the bits can be assigned to signal constellation. As the shapes go through all of the points in the signal constellation as well as they can not go through each point more than once, there are M! shapes which can be used to encode. Finding the best shape that maximizes the  $d_{\text{free}}^2$  for a given bit assignment in the signal constellation is equivalent to finding the arrangement of symbols in the signal constellation that also maximizes  $d_{\text{free}}^2$  for a given shape in term of search space. As the  $\oplus$ and  $\ominus$  operations depend on the employed shape, reduction of search space for finding the larger  $d_{\text{free}}^2$  is possible by employing an encoding scheme that depends only on bit assignment rather than shape and then by finding the bit assignment which maximizes the free Euclidean distance for that encoding operation. From Tables 2.1 and 2.2, the output of  $\oplus$ and  $\ominus$  operations are always an integer ranging from 0 to M-1 and all of the integers from 0 to M-1 appears exactly once in each row. So it can be concluded that the encoding works as long as the outputs of  $\oplus$  and  $\ominus$  satisfy:

- For a fixed state variable j, the output of the  $\oplus$  operation is unique for each unique input symbol index s.
- For a fixed target point t, the output of the  $\ominus$  operation is unique for each unique signal space index a.

Using the above-mentioned properties, the encoding was simplified by replacing  $\oplus$  and  $\ominus$  with following equations:

$$s_i \oplus j = s_i + j \pmod{M} \tag{2.4}$$

$$t_k \ominus a_i = t_k + a_i \pmod{M} \tag{2.5}$$

This modified encoding depends on how the bits are assigned in the signal constellation and doesn't require any shape to encode. To distinguish between this modification and SPTC,

this new encoding will be mentioned as Constellation Arithmetic Code (CAC) as all the encoding is computed using arithmetic on the signal constellation. The encoding is given below:

| Algorithm 2 Constellation Arithmetic Code Encoding                    |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| 1: input to the encoder: symbol $S_i$ , previous state variable $j_i$ |  |  |
| 2: $s_i \leftarrow \psi(S_i)$ compute                                 | the integer index of $S_i$                                   |  |
| 3: $a_i \leftarrow s_i + j_i \pmod{M}$                                |  |  |
| 4: determine the target point $t_k$ where $k = i \pmod{u}$            |  |  |
| 5: $r_i \leftarrow t_k + a_i \pmod{M}$                                |  |  |
| 6: $j_{i+1} \leftarrow j_i + r_i \pmod{M}$                            | update the state after encoding                              |  |
| 7: $R_i \leftarrow \psi^{-1}(r_i)$                                    | compute the parity symbol $R_i$ from the integer index $r_i$ |  |
| 8: return parity symbol $R_i$ and state variable $j_{i+1}$            |  |  |

In (2.5), adding t = 0 yields to the same result from (2.4) and using constant target points other than t = 0 results in different trellis structure with no significant coding gain. However, as the motivation of CAC is to find the best bit assignment for a fixed trellis, further simplification of Constellation Arithmetic Code has been done for calculating the parity symbol index by excluding (2.5) from the encoding operation of CAC.

| Algorithm 3 Simplified Constellation Arithmetic Code Encoding         |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| 1: input to the encoder: symbol $S_i$ , previous state variable $j_i$ |   |  |
| 2: $s_i \leftarrow \psi(S_i)$ compute                                 | the integer index of $S_i$                                  |  |
| 3: $r_i \leftarrow s_i + j_i \pmod{M}$                                |   |  |
| $4: j_{i+1} \leftarrow j_i + r_i \pmod{M}$                            | update the state after encoding                             |  |
| 5: $R_i \leftarrow \psi^{-1}(r_i)$ c                                  | ompute the parity symbol $R_i$ from the integer index $r_i$ |  |
| 6: return parity symbol $R_i$ and state variable $j_{i+1}$            |   |  |

The trellis for CAC using QPSK constellation from Fig. 2.6 is presented in Fig. 2.14.



Fig. 2.14: Trellis structure for CAC using QPSK constellation shown in Fig. 2.6.

Now for this trellis and signal constellation the pair of paths on the trellis that has the minimum distance between them is shown in Fig. 2.15 by solid black lines. For this constellation

$$d_{\text{free}}^2 = d_e^2(0,2) + d_e^2(0,2) + d_e^2(0,0) + d_e^2(0,2)$$
  
=  $4E_{c,s} + 4E_{c,s} + 0 + 4E_{c,s}$  (2.6)  
=  $12E_{c,s}$ .

From (2.6),  $d_{\text{free}}^2$  results from the distance between symbol 0 and 2 in the signal constellation. Symbol 0 is assigned to point (-1, -1) and symbol 2 is assigned to point (-1, 1) and the distance between them is  $2\sqrt{E_{c,s}}$  while the distance between the point (-1, -1) and (1, 1)is  $2\sqrt{2E_{c,s}}$  for average energy per coded symbol  $\sqrt{E_{c,s}}$ . So it is possible to increase  $d_{\text{free}}^2$  by swapping symbol 2 with symbol 3 in the constellation as shown in Fig. 2.16.



Fig. 2.15: Branches (black solid line) on the trellis that results in  $d_{\text{free}}^2$  for CAC on QPSK constellation shown in Fig. 2.6.



Fig. 2.16: QPSK signal constellation with bit assignment that produces  $d_{\text{free}}^2 = 20E_{c,s}$ .

For the signal constellation shown in Fig. 2.16 the minimum distance between sequences on the trellis is shown in Fig. 2.17 and the free Euclidean distance

$$d_{\text{free}}^2 = d_e^2(0,1) + d_e^2(0,1) + d_e^2(0,2) + d_e^2(0,3)$$
$$= 4E_{c,s} + 4E_{c,s} + 8E_{c,s} + 4E_{c,s}$$
$$= 20E_{c,s}$$



Fig. 2.17: Branches (black solid line) on the trellis that results in  $d_{\text{free}}^2$  for CAC on QPSK constellation shown in Fig. 2.16.

Free Euclidean distance corresponding to CAC on 16QAM using the bit assignment shown in Fig. 2.1 is  $d_{\text{free}}^2 = 12E_{c,s}$ . For this bit assignment, the pair of paths that produces the free Euclidean distance on the trellis is shown in Fig. 2.18 by black solid lines.



Fig. 2.18: Branches (black solid line) on the trellis that results in  $d_{\rm free}^2$  for CAC on 16QAM using constellation shown in Fig. 2.1.

In order to show the relation between free Euclidean distance and coding gain, a bit assignment is shown in Fig. 2.19. This bit assignment produces  $d_{\text{free}}^2 = 20E_{c,s}$  which is larger than the free Euclidean distance results from using gray code indexing as shown in Fig. 2.1. There are 16! possible bit assignments in the 16QAM constellation. So finding the bit assignment which has the largest  $d_{\text{free}}^2$  among those 16! bit assignments are computationally expensive. In order to find bit assignments in the 16QAM constellation with larger  $d_{\rm free}^2$ , 4 symbols are selected arbitrarily and they have been fixed at points (-3, -3), (3, -3), (-3,3) and (3,3) respectively in order to reduce the search space from 16! to 12! and find a bit assignment with larger  $d_{\text{free}}^2$  rather than finding the largest  $d_{\text{free}}^2$ . Then an exhaustive search has been made using the other 12 symbols and points in the signal constellation to find possible bit assignment with largest  $d_{\text{free}}^2$  from all possible 12! symbol assignments. By randomly selecting those 4 symbols, it has been found that by selecting symbols 0, 3, 12 and 15 and fixing those symbols to points (-3, -3), (3, -3), (-3, 3) and (3, 3), it is possible to produce two bit assignments with  $d_{\text{free}}^2 = 28E_{c,s}$ . Those two bit assignments are shown in Fig. 2.20 and 2.21. For 2.20, the pair of paths that produces the free Euclidean distance on the trellis is shown in Fig. 2.22 by black solid lines. The simulated results for these bit assignments with  $d_{\text{free}}^2 = 12E_{c,s}$ ,  $d_{\text{free}}^2 = 20E_{c,s}$  and  $d_{\text{free}}^2 = 28E_{c,s}$  are presented in Figs. 3.7, 3.8 and 3.9 respectively. From these results, it can be seen that it is possible to increase coding gain for CAC by increasing  $d_{\text{free}}^2$ .



Fig. 2.19: 16-QAM signal constellation with bit assignment that produces  $d_{\text{free}}^2 = 20E_{c,s}$ .



Fig. 2.20: 16-QAM signal constellation with bit assignment that produces  $d_{\text{free}}^2 = 28E_{c,s}$ .



Fig. 2.21: 16-QAM signal constellation with bit assignment that produces  $d_{\text{free}}^2 = 28E_{c,s}$ .



Fig. 2.22: Branches (black solid line) on the trellis that results in  $d_{\rm free}^2$  for CAC on 16QAM using bit assignment shown in Fig. 2.20.

In Fig. 2.20, the bits are assigned in the signal constellation as follows: first, the combination of bits that are to be assigned are represented in decimal integer values. Then starting from the bottom left point in the signal constellation and moving towards right those integer representation of bits are assigned to the points in ascending order. When all the points of that row have their assigned bits, the immediate upper row in the signal constellation is selected for bit assignment. This operation is performed until all the points in the signal constellation have their assigned bits. This method of bits assignment using CAC provides the maximum coding gain compared to all of the simulated performance in this thesis for the 16QAM constellation and a coding gain for CAC on 64QAM compared to SPTC. It is denoted as "Sequential Bits Assignment". Sequential Bit Assignment on a 64QAM constellation shown in Fig. 2.23, produces  $d_{\rm free}^2 = 28E_{c,s}$  for CAC.



Fig. 2.23: 64-QAM signal constellation with Sequential Bits Assignment that produces  $d_{\rm free}^2 = 28 E_{c,s}.$ 

Now, as the coding gain depends on  $d_{\text{free}}^2$ , the maximum coding gain for a given free Euclidean distance is bounded by the asymptotic coding gain [9] which is calculated as follows:

$$\gamma = \left(\frac{E_{s,m}}{E_{c,s}}\right) \left(\frac{d_{\text{free}}^2}{d_{\min,\text{uncoded}}^2}\right).$$
(2.7)

Here  $d_{\text{free}}^2$  is the free Euclidean distance and  $d_{\min,\text{uncoded}}^2$  is the smallest distance between any two points in the constellation.  $E_{s,m}$  is the energy per uncoded symbol and  $E_{c,s}$  is the total energy required to send coded symbols. For code with rate R and a given constellation, 1/R coded symbols are transmitted for every message symbol which requires 1/R times more energy than for an uncoded symbol transmitted using that constellation. Therefore,  $\frac{E_{s,m}}{E_{c,s}} = R$ . For the constellations used in this thesis,  $d_{\min,\text{uncoded}}^2$  is always  $4E_{c,s}$ . Using the free Euclidean distances obtained for different shapes and bit assignments, the asymptotic coding gains for different codes along with the asymptotic coding gains for larger states (which will be introduced in Chapter 4) have been listed in Table 4.1. This list provides a theoretical upper bounds for coding gains.

# **2.5** Encoding of Rate $\frac{k}{k+1}$ Code

Initially, the proposed encoders of both SPTC and CAC are of rate  $\frac{1}{2}$  because for each input symbol the encoder generates one parity symbol. Though lower rate increases the error correction capability of codes, it decreases the information transmission rate per coded symbol. Therefore increasing the rate of codes while maintaining a good coding gain is of significant interest in error correction coding. In this section, two methods for changing rate from  $\frac{1}{2}$  to  $\frac{k}{k+1}$  using Constellation Arithmetic Code have been proposed. In the encoding algorithms shown in Figs. 2.24 and 2.25, all the inputs *s* and outputs *r* are integer indexes of the input symbol *S* and the output parity symbol *R* and the  $\sum$  represents  $a + b \pmod{M}$ . For this section, at every time *i*, *k* symbols are to encoded to generate a parity symbol  $R_i$  which makes the proposed encodes of rate  $\frac{k}{k+1}$ . The encoding methods are described below.

#### 2.5.1 Sequential Input Encoding

In this encoding scheme, only one target point is used to calculate the parity symbol index. The motivation for this encoding is to first encode all of the input symbols sequentially and then generate a parity symbol using only one target point and the output obtained from the sequential encoding of the input symbols. As this method encodes the input symbols sequentially to generate a parity symbol, it is called Sequential Input Encoding (SIE). To encode, each of k input symbol is mapped to their corresponding signal space index. Then among the k signal space indexes, the signal space index corresponding to the first input symbol is added with the state variable  $j_i$  using (2.4) to move to a new signal space index a corresponding to a point of the signal constellation. Then for the rest of k-1 symbols, this a is updated by adding previous a with the next symbol's signal space index using (2.4). Finally this updated signal space index a is added with the target symbol's signal space index using (2.5) to get the signal space index r of the parity symbol R. This encoding process is shown in Fig. 2.24. This encoding is also presented in algorithm 4.



Fig. 2.24: Schematic diagram for rate  $\frac{k}{k+1}$  using Sequential Input Encoding (SIE).

# Algorithm 4 Rate k/k+1: Sequential Input Encoding (SIE)

- 1: input to the encoder: symbol  $S_{ik}, S_{ik+1}, ..., S_{ik+k-1}$  , previous state variable  $j_i$
- 2:  $s_{ik} \leftarrow \psi(S_{ik})$  compute the integer index of  $S_{ik}$
- 3:  $a_0 \leftarrow s_{ik} + j_i \pmod{M}$
- 4: for l = 1 : k 1 do
- 5:  $s_{ik+l} \leftarrow \psi(S_{ik+l})$  compute the integer index of  $S_{ik+l}$
- 6:  $a_l \leftarrow s_{ik+l} + a_{l-1} \pmod{M}$
- 7: end for
- 8: determine the target point  $t_k$  where  $k = i \pmod{u}$
- 9:  $r_i \leftarrow t_k + a_{k-1} \pmod{M}$
- 10:  $R_i \leftarrow \psi^{-1}(r_i)$  compute the parity symbol  $R_i$  from the integer index  $r_i$
- 11:  $j_{i+1} \leftarrow j_i + r_i \pmod{M}$  update the state after encoding
- 12: return parity symbol  $R_i$  and state variable  $j_{i+1}$

## 2.5.2 Partial Parallel Encoding

Presented here is another method for changing the rate of CAC. In this method, k input symbols are encoded individually using k target points to generate the parity symbol. All of those k target points might have signal space index of same values or might have different values. For this thesis, while simulating results using this method, target point with 0 signal space index has been selected for all k of those target points. In this encoding, there is a signal space index defined as an intermediate state variable q that acts as a state variable during each encoding of symbol and is used to update the state variable j after generating the parity symbol R. Using target points and q, all of the k input symbols are encoded individually to generate total k different signal space index q. Initially, the q is equal to the input state variable  $j_i$  which gets updated after encoding of each symbol and acts as an input state variable for the next symbol. Those k signal space indexes g, generated from each individual encoding of input symbols can be viewed as temporary parity symbol indexes for k input symbols which are added together using  $a + b \pmod{M}$  to generate the parity symbol index r. This encoding algorithm is called Partial Parallel Encoding (PPE) because all of the input symbols are encoded in a partially parallel method. The schematic diagram for this encoding is shown in Fig. 2.25 and also presented in algorithm 5.



Fig. 2.25: Schematic diagram for rate  $\frac{k}{k+1}$  using Partial Parallel Encoding (PPE).

Algorithm 5 Rate k/k+1: Partial Parallel Encoding (PPE)

1: input to the encoder: symbol  $S_{ik}, S_{ik+1}, \dots, S_{ik+k-1}$  , previous state variable  $j_i$ 

2: 
$$q_0 \leftarrow j_i$$
  
3: for  $l = 0 : k - 1$  do  
4:  $s_{ik+l} \leftarrow \psi(S_{ik+l})$   
5:  $p_l \leftarrow s_{ik+l} + q_l \pmod{M}$   
6: determine the target point  $t_c$  where  $c = l \pmod{u}$   
7:  $g_l \leftarrow p_l + t_c \pmod{M}$   
8:  $q_{l+1} = g_l + q_l \pmod{M}$   
9: end for  
10:  $r_i \leftarrow \sum_{l=0}^{k-1} g_l \pmod{M}$   
11:  $R_i \leftarrow \psi^{-1}(r_i)$   
12:  $g_k \leftarrow r_i + q_k \pmod{M}$   
13:  $q_{k+1} \leftarrow g_k + t_k \pmod{M}$   
14:  $j_{i+1} \leftarrow q_{k+1} + j_i \pmod{M}$   
15: return parity symbol  $R_i$  and state variable  $j_{i+1}$ 

# 2.5.3 Decoding a k/(k+1) Rate Code

For codes with a rate higher than 1/2, the trellis contains parallel branches from state  $j_i$  to state  $j_{i+1}$  at each *i*. At every *i*, *k* symbols are encoded to generate a parity symbol  $R_i$ . Each of the branches of the trellis has *k* input symbols and one parity symbol. A trellis for SIE rate 2/3 CAC using QPSK constellation is shown in Fig. 2.26. In Fig. 2.26, all of the branches are indicated by black dashed lines and from each of the initial state to each of the final state, there are 4 parallel branches. As this trellis is for rate 2/3 code each branch has two input symbols and one parity symbols and the symbols associated with each branch are labeled as  $S_0, S_1/R$ , located in the left of each state where  $S_0$  is the first input symbol,  $S_1$  is the second input symbol and R is the parity symbol. In Fig. 2.26, at the left of each initial state there are four horizontal lines which contain all the input and

parity symbols associated with the branches that originated from that state. For each of the collection of such four lines, by using zero-based indexing, the order of the lines represents the branch's final state. For example, among the four lines located on the left of state 0, line 0 represents all of the parallel branches that end at state 0 starting from state 0. In each of those lines, there are four triplets of symbols  $(S_0, S_1/R)$ , each associated with a branch. The first symbol triplet represents the top branch among all of the parallel branches that started from the same state and ended at the same state, similarly the second symbol triplet represents the second topmost branch and so on. For example from line 0 located on the left of initial state 0, the third symbol triplet 2,0/0 (surrounded by an oval box) is associated with the third topmost branch (indicated by solid black arrow) that starts from start 0 and ends at state 0. Now in order to decode, the Viterbi algorithm searches through all of the branches including the parallel branches at each time *i* and calculates the branch metric  $\mu_t$  using

$$\mu_t = d_e^2(S_{ik}, \hat{S}_{ik}) + d_e^2(S_{ik+1}, \hat{S}_{ik+1}) + \dots + d_e^2(S_{ik+k-1}, \hat{S}_{ik+k-1}) + d_e^2(R_i, \hat{R}_i)$$
(2.8)

and selects the branch symbols associated with the path with minimum path metric.



Fig. 2.26: Trellis structure for rate 2/3 CAC (SIE) using QPSK constellation.

#### CHAPTER 3

#### SIMULATION AND RESULTS

In this chapter, the required calculations for simulating the Signal Point Target Code and Constellation Arithmetic Code as well as the simulation results for both of the proposed codes are provided.

#### 3.1 Calculation of Energy Per Bit for Simulation

In the simulated performance of an error correction coding system, the horizontal axis of the performance plot is usually the signal-to-noise ratio,  $E_b/N_0$  expressed in dB, where  $E_b$ is the energy per transmitted message bit (that is, a bit that actually conveys information, as opposed to merely a bit in a codeword), and  $N_0$  is the noise power spectral density. Since  $E_b/N_0$  is expressed as a ratio, either  $E_b$  or  $N_0$  may be fixed, and other quantity determined from the ratio. In simulations presented here, the amplitude A of the signal constellation is fixed. For that signal constellation,  $E_b$  is calculated and  $N_0$  is determined from that  $E_b$ . Simulated additive white Gaussian noise is produced with the variance

$$\sigma^2 = \frac{N_0}{2}.\tag{3.1}$$

This section describes the relationship between the various quantities.

First, the BPSK modulation, with transmitted symbol amplitude fixed at  $\pm A$  is considered. These amplitudes are used to transmit all the bits, that is, the coded bits. Let the energy associated with this transmission be denoted as  $E_c$ , the energy per coded bit. Then

$$E_c = A^2$$
 Joules/coded bit.

For a given constellation,  $E_c$  is fixed in the simulation. In a coded system, the rate R is the ratio

$$R = \frac{\text{number of message bits}}{\text{number coded bits}}.$$

R is always less than 1.

The energy per message bit,  $E_b$  is thus

$$E_b \frac{\text{Joules}}{\text{message bits}} = E_c \frac{\text{Joules}}{\text{coded bits}} \frac{1}{R} \frac{\text{number of coded bits}}{\text{number of message bits}}$$

$$E_b = E_c/R.$$

By looking at from another point of view, to transmit coded bits using the same energy that has been allocated for uncoded message bits, the energy per message bit  $E_b$  must be distributed among the coded bits, so

$$E_c = RE_b.$$

In a simulation, given an SNR  $\gamma = (E_b/N_0)_{dB}$ , solve for  $N_0$  as

$$N_0 = \frac{E_b}{10^{\gamma/10}}.$$
 (3.2)

from which the noise variance is computed using (3.1). For higher-order modulation with M symbols, let  $n = log_2 M$  be the number of bits per symbol. Let  $E_{c,s}$  denote the fixed energy per symbol in the constellation (carrying coded symbols). For QAM with the square constellations, where the points in the in-phase axis and quadrature axis are at  $\pm A, \pm 3A, ..., \pm (M-1)A$ , the energy per coded symbol is

$$E_{c,s} = \frac{2}{3} (M-1)A^2 \frac{\text{Joules}}{\text{coded symbol}}.$$

45

This energy is fixed by the constellation employed. So the energy per uncoded message symbol  $E_{s,m}$  is

$$E_{s,m} = E_{c,s}/R.$$

Since each symbol carries n bits of information, the energy per bit is

$$E_b = E_{s,m} \frac{\text{Joules}}{\text{uncoded message symbol}} \frac{1 \text{ symbol}}{n \text{ bits}}$$
$$= \frac{E_{s,m}}{n} \frac{\text{Joules}}{\text{message bits}}$$
$$= \frac{E_{c,s}}{nR}.$$

Using the energy per bit for coded symbol  $E_b$ ,  $\sigma^2$  and  $N_0$  are calculated from (3.1) and (3.2) for a given SNR  $\gamma$ . For M = 16, n = 4,  $R = \frac{1}{2}$ , let A = 1. So  $E_b = \frac{2 \times 15}{3 \times 4 \times .5} = 5$ . Using  $E_b$ ,  $\sigma$  is calculated for SNR  $\gamma$  and then  $N \sim \mathcal{N}(0, \sigma^2)$  is generated where N is the noise added with the transmitted signal at that SNR  $\gamma$ . The received signal is

$$\hat{S}_i = S_i + N$$
$$\hat{R}_i = R_i + N,$$

where  $R_i$  =transmitted parity symbol,  $S_i$  =transmitted message symbol. Received symbols  $\hat{S}_i$  and  $\hat{R}_i$  are used as input of Viterbi decoder to get decoded message symbol  $\tilde{S}_i$ . If  $\tilde{S}_i \neq S_i$  then an error has occurred. Let  $z_{\gamma,i}$  is a Bernoulli random variable with probability  $p_{\gamma}$ , where  $p_{\gamma}$  is the probability of symbol error at SNR  $\gamma$ . So

$$z_{\gamma,i} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if an error occurs in the decoder} \\ 0 & \text{if there is no error.} \end{cases}$$

Let  $e_{\gamma}$  be the total number of errors occurred for SNR  $\gamma$  and  $N_{s,\gamma}$  be the total number of symbols sent through the channel at that SNR  $\gamma$ . As so  $e_{\gamma} = \sum_{i=1}^{N_{s,\gamma}} z_{\gamma,i}$ ,  $e_{\gamma}$  is binomially distributed  $\sim B(N_{s,\gamma}, p_{\gamma})$  with  $E[e_{\gamma}] = N_{s,\gamma}p_{\gamma}$  and  $var(e_{\gamma}) = N_{s,\gamma}p_{\gamma}(1-p_{\gamma})$ . The likelihood function for  $e_{\gamma}$ 

$$f_{e_{\gamma}}(e_{\gamma}|p_{\gamma}) = \binom{N_{s,\gamma}}{e_{\gamma}} p_{\gamma}^{e_{\gamma}} (1-p_{\gamma})^{(N_{s,\gamma}-e_{\gamma})}.$$

The log likelihood function is

$$\Lambda(e_{\gamma}, p_{\gamma}) = \log f_{e_{\gamma}}(e_{\gamma}|p_{\gamma})$$
$$= \log \binom{N_{s,\gamma}}{e_{\gamma}} + e_{\gamma} \log p_{\gamma} + (N_{s,\gamma} - e_{\gamma}) \log(1 - p_{\gamma}).$$

Now by taking gradient with respect to  $p_{\gamma}$  and equating to zero, maximum likelihood estimation of the probability of symbol error  $\hat{p}_{\gamma}$  at SNR  $\gamma$  is obtained.

$$\frac{\partial \Lambda(e_{\gamma}, p_{\gamma})}{\partial p_{\gamma}} = 0$$

$$\frac{e_{\gamma}}{p_{\gamma}} - \frac{(N_{s,\gamma} - e_{\gamma})}{1 - p_{\gamma}} = 0$$

$$\hat{p}_{\gamma} = \frac{e_{\gamma}}{N_{s,\gamma}}$$
(3.3)

The variance of  $\hat{p}_{\gamma}$  is

$$\begin{aligned} \operatorname{var}(\hat{p}_{\gamma}) &= \operatorname{var}(\frac{e_{\gamma}}{N_{s,\gamma}}) \\ &= \frac{1}{N_{s,\gamma}^2} N_{s,\gamma} p_{\gamma} (1 - p_{\gamma}) \\ &= \frac{p_{\gamma} (1 - p_{\gamma})}{N_{s,\gamma}} \\ &= \frac{\hat{p}_{\gamma} (1 - \hat{p}_{\gamma})}{N_{s,\gamma}} \quad \text{using the estimated } \hat{p}_{\gamma} \\ &= \frac{\frac{e_{\gamma}}{N_{s,\gamma}} (1 - \frac{e_{\gamma}}{N_{s,\gamma}})}{N_{s,\gamma}} \\ &= \frac{e_{\gamma} N_{s,\gamma} - e_{\gamma}^2}{N_{s,\gamma}^3}. \end{aligned}$$

So the standard deviation is

$$\sigma_{\hat{p}_{\gamma}} = \sqrt{\operatorname{var}(\hat{p}_{\gamma})} = \sqrt{\frac{e_{\gamma}N_{s,\gamma} - e_{\gamma}^{2}}{N_{s,\gamma}^{3}}}.$$
(3.4)

For simulation,  $N_{s,\gamma}$  is counted until  $e_{\gamma} = 100$ . Using  $N_{s,\gamma}$  and  $e_{\gamma} = 100$  probability of symbol error is calculated from (3.3). The bit error rate of coded symbols is calculated by taking the ratio of the total number of erroneous bits and the total number of transmitted bits. The total number of transmitted bits is calculated from  $N_{s,\gamma}$  and the total number of erroneous bits is calculated by counting how many bits vary between  $\tilde{S}_i$  and  $S_i$  when  $\tilde{S}_i \neq S_i$ . In this thesis, the level of confidence for calculating  $\hat{p}_{\gamma}$  is considered as inversely proportional to standard deviation of  $\hat{p}_{\gamma}$ . The smaller the  $\hat{p}_{\gamma}$  is, the higher the level of confidence is. For  $e_{\gamma} = 100$ , at each SNR  $\gamma$ , the standard deviation of  $\hat{p}_{\gamma}$  is calculated from (3.4). In Figs. 3.1 and 3.3, the error bars represent one standard deviation above and below from the estimated probability of symbol errors. As the error bars for each  $\hat{p}_{\gamma}$  is very small, the confidence level is high. So the error bars are not presented in the rest of the BER and SER plots for this thesis.

In this thesis, the performances of codes are evaluated as BER and SER for constellations of different sizes. Gray code indexing, as well as other bit assignments in the signal constellation, have been used to calculate  $d_{\text{free}}^2$  and simulate their coding gain. As there is no theoretical bound for bit error rate if the bits are not assigned using gray code indexing so to evaluate BER of proposed encoding schemes, first theoretical SER for uncoded symbols are calculated using (3.5) and (3.6). The plots of those theoretical SERs have been labeled by "th" with their corresponding signal constellation name. For example, in Fig. 3.1 the blue dotted line labeled by "QPSK(th) SER" represents the theoretical symbol error rate of QPSK constellation. The simulated SER and SER are calculated by sending uncoded symbols over an AWGN channel with SNR  $\gamma$  and by counting the total number of erroneous bits and symbols after decoding the received symbols. The plots of such SERs and BERs, obtained from simulations are labeled by "ex" with their corresponding signal constellation name. For example, in Fig. 3.1, the red solid line labeled by "QPSK(ex) SER" represents the SER of uncoded symbols using QPSK constellation and the red dotted line labeled by "QPSK(ex) BER" represents BER of uncoded symbols using QPSK constellation. In these labels, "(th)" represents theoretical result and "(ex)" represents experimental results. After calculating SER for uncoded symbols from simulations, the results have been compared with theoretical SER for uncoded symbols of the same constellation size to make sure the simulations are working properly. If the simulated SER overlays with theoretical SER then the BER obtained from that simulation has been used to compare with the BER of coded symbols. The theoretical BER for BPSK [9] is calculated using

$$P_e = Q\left(\sqrt{\frac{2E_b}{N_0}}\right),\tag{3.5}$$

where Q(.) is standard Q function defined in A. The theoretical SER [10] for constellation larger than BPSK is calculated using

$$P_e = 1 - \left(1 - 2\left(1 - \frac{1}{\sqrt{M}}\right)Q\left(\sqrt{\frac{3nE_b}{(M-1)N_0}}\right)\right)^2.$$
 (3.6)

## **3.2** Performance of SPTC and CAC for Rate 1/2 Codes

In this section, the simulation results for both rate 1/2 SPTC and rate 1/2 CAC are presented. For SPTC different shapes and constellations are used to generate BER and SER while for CAC different constellations and bit assignments are used. The performances of both codes are evaluated using BER and SER obtained from simulations.

## 3.2.1 Performance of SPTC

From Fig. 3.1, using the shape shown in Fig. 2.6 and QPSK constellation with gray code indexing provides approximately 2.25 dB coding gain for both SER and BER compared to uncoded QPSK at  $P_s = 10^{-5}$ . The shape shown in Fig. 2.6, has  $d_{\text{free}}^2 = 16E_{c,s}$ .



Fig. 3.1: BER and SER Curve for rate  $\frac{1}{2}$  SPTC with target point t = 0 on a QPSK constellation for the shape shown in Fig. 2.6.

The performance of SPTC using the shape from Fig. 2.10 which has  $d_{\text{free}}^2 = 28E_{c,s}$  and QPSK constellation with gray code indexing, is presented in Fig. 3.2. As this shape has a larger  $d_{\text{free}}^2$  than the shape shown in Fig. 2.6, at  $P_s = 10^{-5}$  it provides a coding gain of 3 dB compared to uncoded QPSK and a coding gain of 0.75 dB compared to the performance of the shape shown in Fig. 2.6.



Fig. 3.2: BER and SER Curve for rate  $\frac{1}{2}$  SPTC with target point t = 0 on a QPSK constellation for shape shown in Fig. 2.10.

To simulate the performance of SPTC on 16QAM constellation with gray code indexing, the shape shown in Fig. 2.1 has been used and the performance is presented in Fig. 3.3. The shape used for this simulation has  $d_{\text{free}}^2 = 16E_{c,s}$ . At  $P_s = 10^{-4}$ , this code has a coding gain of 2.75 dB compared to the performance of uncoded 16QAM constellation.



Fig. 3.3: BER and SER Curve for rate  $\frac{1}{2}$  SPTC with target point t = 0 on a 16QAM constellation for shape shown in Fig. 2.1.

Fig. 3.4 shows the performance of SPTC using 64QAM constellation with gray code indexing, constant target point t = 0 and the shape shown in Fig. 2.3. From the BER and SER curves, it can be seen that using this shape a coding gain of 2.5 dB compared to the performance of uncoded 64QAM can be achieved.



Fig. 3.4: BER and SER Curve for rate  $\frac{1}{2}$  SPTC with target point t = 0 on a 64QAM constellation for shape shown in Fig. 2.3.

## 3.2.2 Performance of CAC

The performance of CAC using QPSK constellation and bit assignment shown in Fig. 2.6. This bit assignment results in similar performance with SPTC using QPSK constellation and shape shown in Fig. 2.6. For this bit assignment, the free Euclidean distance is  $12E_{c,s}$ .



Fig. 3.5: BER and SER of rate  $\frac{1}{2}$  CAC using QPSK signal constellation and bit assignment shown in Fig. 2.6.

Fig. 3.6 shows that it is possible to increase the coding gain for CAC in QPSK constellation by increasing the  $d_{\text{free}}^2$  to  $20E_{c,s}$  results from the bit assignment shown in Fig. 2.16. The bit assignment from Fig. 2.16 provides 3.5 dB coding gain compared to the performance of uncoded QPSK.



Fig. 3.6: BER and SER of rate  $\frac{1}{2}$  CAC using QPSK signal constellation and bit assignment shown in Fig. 2.16.

To evaluate the performance of CAC on 16QAM constellation for  $d_{\rm free}^2$ , different bit assignments have been used. Using gray code indexing shown in Fig. 2.1 the simulation results for rate 1/2 CAC on 16QAM constellation is presented in Fig. 3.7. Gray code indexing results in  $d_{\rm free}^2 = 16E_{c,s}$  and a coding gain of 3 dB compared to the performance of uncoded 16QAM at  $P_s = 10^{-5}$ .



Fig. 3.7: BER and SER for rate 1/2 CAC using 16QAM constellation and bit assignment shown in Fig. 2.1.

The bit assignment shown in Fig. 2.19, has  $d_{\text{free}}^2 = 20E_{c,s}$  and the performance of CAC using this bit assignment is provided in Fig. 3.8. This bit assignment results in a coding gain of 4 dB at  $P_s = 10^{-5}$  compared to uncoded 16QAM BER and SER.



Fig. 3.8: Ber and SER of rate  $\frac{1}{2}$  CAC using 16QAM constellation and bit assignment shown in Fig. 2.19.

Using the Sequential Bit Assignment shown in Fig. 2.20, the performance of the rate 1/2 CAC on 16QAM constellation is presented in Fig. 3.9. For this bit assignment with  $d_{\rm free}^2 = 28E_{c,s}$ , at  $P_s = 10^{-5}$ , 5 dB coding gain is possible compared to uncoded performance of 16QAM signal constellation. This simulation also shows that rate 1/2 CAC on 16QAM constellation using this bit assignment provides 1 dB coding gain for SER at  $Ps = 10^{-5}$  compared to the SER of uncoded QPSK. The uncoded QPSK has the same information per symbol as the rate 1/2 code using 16QAM constellation.



Fig. 3.9: Ber and SER of rate  $\frac{1}{2}$  CAC using 16QAM constellation and bit assignment shown in Fig. 2.20.

For 64QAM, the BER and SER for rate 1/2 CAC using Sequential Bit Assignment shown in Fig. 2.23 are provided in Fig. 3.10. From Fig. 3.10 it can be seen that the Sequential Bit Assignment provides a 5.5 dB coding gain at  $P_s = 10^{-5}$  compared to the BER and SER of uncoded 64QAM.



Fig. 3.10: Ber and SER of rate  $\frac{1}{2}$  CAC using 64QAM constellation and bit assignment shown in Fig. 2.23.
Simulation results for rate 1/2 CAC using 256QAM signal constellation are shown in Fig. 3.11. For this simulation, Sequential Bit Assignment has been used in the signal constellation. The rate 1/2 CAC provides 5 dB coding gain for both BER and SER compared to uncoded BER and SER for 256QAM.



Fig. 3.11: Ber and SER of rate  $\frac{1}{2}$  CAC using 256QAM constellation and Sequential Bit Assignment.

#### 3.2.3 Comparison of Performance Between CAC and SPTC

Though the performance of SPTC depends on the employed shape and the performance of CAC depends on bit assignment in the signal constellation, in this part of the thesis the performance of SPTC and CAC is compared using free Euclidean distance. In Figs. 3.12 and 3.13, comparison between SPTC and CAC on QPSK constellation is shown. In Fig. 3.12, the performance of SPTC is calculated using the shape shown in Fig. 2.6. For SPTC and CAC, gray code indexing has been used. While for this shape the SPTC has  $d_{\text{free}}^2 = 16E_{c,s}$ and for this bit assignment the CAC has  $d_{\text{free}}^2 = 12E_{c,s}$ , they provided approximately similar performance. In Fig. 3.13, the shape shown in Fig. 2.10 has been used for SPTC with gray code indexing and for CAC, the bit assignment shown in Fig. 2.16 has been used. Though the shape provides  $d_{\text{free}}^2 = 28E_{c,s}$  and the bit assignment provides  $d_{\text{free}}^2 = 20E_{c,s}$ , CAC has a 0.5 dB coding gain compared to SPTC at  $P_s = 10^{-5}$ .



Fig. 3.12: Comparison between rate  $\frac{1}{2}$  Constellation Arithmetic Code and SPTC on a QPSK constellation.



Fig. 3.13: Comparison of performance between rate  $\frac{1}{2}$  Constellation Arithmetic Code and SPTC on a QPSK constellation.

Fig. 3.14 shows the comparison of performance between SPTC and CAC on 16QAM constellation where CAC has 2 dB coding gain at  $Ps = 10^{-4}$ . The shape from Fig. 2.1 used for encoding SPTC has  $d_{\text{free}}^2 = 16E_{c,s}$  while the Sequential Bit Assignment used in CAC has  $d_{\text{free}}^2 = 28E_{c,s}$ . The comparison between SPTC and CAC using 64QAM constellation is shown in Fig. 3.15. The SPTC has been simulated using the shape shown in Fig. 2.3 using gray code indexing and the CAC has been simulated using the bit assignment shown in Fig. 2.23. From Fig. 3.15, CAC has 2.5 dB coding gain compared to SPTC at  $P_s = 10^{-4}$ .



Fig. 3.14: Comparison of performance between rate  $\frac{1}{2}$  Constellation Arithmetic Code and SPTC on a 16QAM constellation.



Fig. 3.15: Comparison of performance between rate  $\frac{1}{2}$  Constellation Arithmetic Code and SPTC on a 64QAM constellation.

### 3.3 Performance of Codes for Different Trellis Depth

Fig. 3.16 presents the performance of the Viterbi decoder for different trellis depth using QPSK signal constellation with rate 1/2 CAC and bit assignment shown in Fig. 2.16. From this figure, it can be seen that by increasing the trellis depth the performance of the decoder can be increased. However, for larger trellis depth no noticeable coding gain is achieved. The performance of the decoder remains same for trellis depth of 5, 10 and 20. Therefore trellis depth of 10 has been used to decode the received symbols using the Viterbi algorithm.



Fig. 3.16: Comparison of performance for rate  $\frac{1}{2}$  CAC using QPSK signal constellation and bit assignment shown in Fig. 2.16 with various trellis depths.

## **3.4** Performance of CAC for Rate 2/3 and Rate 3/4 Codes

In this section, the simulated performances of CAC for rate 2/3 and rate 3/4 have been provided. In QPSK constellation, gray code indexing has been used and for 16QAM and 64QAM constellation bit assignments shown in Figs. 2.20 and 2.23 have been used. Results for both SIE and PPE are provided below. For evaluating the performance of the proposed methods, comparisons have been made using BER and SER between the codes for a given constellation and uncoded modulation for that constellation.

#### 3.4.1 Simulation Results for Rate 2/3 and Rate 3/4 Codes Using SIE

Simulation results for CAC using QPSK constellation for rate 2/3 and rate 3/4 are provided in Figs. 3.17 and 3.18. From these results it can be seen that this method provides 1.5 dB coding gain  $P_s = 10^{-4}$  compared to uncoded QPSK for both 2/3 and 3/4 rate codes on QPSK constellation. The BER and SER curves for rate 2/3 and rate 3/4 codes using 16QAM constellation are shown in Figs. 3.19 and 3.20. In Figs. 3.19 and 3.20, SIE has a 1.5 dB coding gain at  $P_s = 10^{-5}$  for both rate 2/3 and rate 3/4 codes from uncoded 16QAM. For SIE, the BER and SER curves for rate 2/3 CAC using 64QAM is shown in Fig. 3.21 and from this plot it can be seen that there is a 1 dB coding gain at  $P_s = 10^{-4}$ .



Fig. 3.17: BER and SER curve of rate  $\frac{2}{3}$  CAC (SIE) on a QPSK constellation.



Fig. 3.18: BER and SER curve of rate  $\frac{3}{4}$  CAC (SIE) on a QPSK constellation.



Fig. 3.19: BER and SER curve of rate  $\frac{2}{3}$  CAC (SIE) on a 16QAM constellation.



Fig. 3.20: BER and SER curve of rate  $\frac{3}{4}$  CAC (SIE) on a 16QAM constellation.



Fig. 3.21: BER and SER curve of rate  $\frac{2}{3}$  CAC (SIE) on a 64QAM constellation.

#### 3.4.2 Simulation Results for Rate 2/3 and Rate 3/4 Codes Using PPE

The BER and SER curves of rate 2/3 and rate 3/4 codes encoded using PPE and QPSK, 16QAM, and 64QAM constellations are provided in Figs. 3.22, 3.23, 3.24, 3.25 and 3.26. From Figs. 3.22, 3.23 and 3.25 it can be seen that this method fails to provide any coding gain for QPSK constellation and rate 3/4 codes for 16QAM and 64QAM constellation. However, from the results of Figs. 3.24 and 3.26, PPE has a good coding gain for rate 2/3 code on 16QAM and 64QAM constellation compared to the coding gain of SIE rate 2/3 codes for these constellations. In Fig. 3.24, PPE has a 4 dB coding gain at  $P_s = 10^{-5}$ compared to the BER and SER of the uncoded 16QAM constellation and in 3.26, PPE has 5.5 dB coding gain at  $P_s = 10^{-5}$  compared to the performance of the uncoded 64QAM constellation.



Fig. 3.22: BER and SER curve of rate  $\frac{2}{3}$  CAC (PPE) on a QPSK constellation.



Fig. 3.23: BER and SER curve of rate  $\frac{3}{4}$  CAC (PPE) on a QPSK constellation.



Fig. 3.24: BER and SER curve of rate  $\frac{2}{3}$  CAC (PPE) on a 16QAM constellation.



Fig. 3.25: BER and SER curve of rate  $\frac{3}{4}$  CAC (PPE) on a 16QAM constellation.



Fig. 3.26: BER and SER curve of rate  $\frac{2}{3}$  CAC (PPE) on a 64QAM constellation.

## 3.4.3 Summarization of Results

Table 3.1 summarizes the performance of SPTC and CAC for different constellations and rates. In this table, for a given constellation coding gain is compared with the SER of the uncoded modulation using that constellation. For rate 2/3 and 3/4 codes and rate 1/2 SPTC using 64QAM, the free Euclidean distance  $d_{\rm free}^2$  is not provided in this table.

| Constellation     | Encoding Method | Rate | $d_{\rm free}^2$ | Coding Gain                |
|-------------------|-----------------|------|------------------|----------------------------|
| QPSK              | SPTC            | 1/2  | $16E_{c,s}$      | 2.25 dB at $P_s = 10^{-5}$ |
| QPSK              | SPTC            | 1/2  | $28E_{c,s}$      | 3.0 dB at $P_s = 10^{-5}$  |
| QPSK              | CAC             | 1/2  | $12E_{c,s}$      | 2.0 dB at $P_s = 10^{-5}$  |
| QPSK              | CAC             | 1/2  | $20E_{c,s}$      | 3.5 dB at $P_s = 10^{-5}$  |
| QPSK              | CAC (SIE)       | 2/3  |                  | 1.5 dB at $P_s = 10^{-4}$  |
| QPSK              | CAC (PPE)       | 2/3  |                  | No Coding Gain             |
| QPSK              | CAC (SIE)       | 3/4  |                  | 1.5 dB at $P_s = 10^{-5}$  |
| QPSK              | CAC (PPE)       | 3/4  |                  | No Coding Gain             |
| $16 \mathrm{QAM}$ | SPTC            | 1/2  | $16E_{c,s}$      | 2.75 dB at $P_s = 10^{-4}$ |
| 16QAM             | CAC             | 1/2  | $12E_{c,s}$      | 3.0 dB at $P_s = 10^{-5}$  |
| 16QAM             | CAC             | 1/2  | $20E_{c,s}$      | 4.0 dB at $P_s = 10^{-5}$  |
| 16QAM             | CAC             | 1/2  | $28E_{c,s}$      | 5.0 dB at $P_s = 10^{-5}$  |
| $16 \mathrm{QAM}$ | CAC (SIE)       | 2/3  |                  | 1.5 dB at $P_s = 10^{-6}$  |
| $16 \mathrm{QAM}$ | CAC (PPE)       | 2/3  |                  | 4.0 dB at $P_s = 10^{-5}$  |
| $16 \mathrm{QAM}$ | CAC (SIE)       | 3/4  |                  | 1.5 dB at $P_s = 10^{-5}$  |
| $16 \mathrm{QAM}$ | CAC (PPE)       | 3/4  |                  | No Coding Gain             |
| 64QAM             | SPTC            | 1/2  |                  | 2.5 dB at $P_s = 10^{-5}$  |
| 64QAM             | CAC             | 1/2  | $28E_{c,s}$      | 5.5 dB at $P_s = 10^{-5}$  |
| 64QAM             | CAC (SIE)       | 2/3  |                  | 1.0 dB at $P_s = 10^{-4}$  |
| 64QAM             | CAC (PPE)       | 2/3  |                  | 5.5 dB at $P_s = 10^{-5}$  |
| 256QAM            | CAC             | 1/2  | $28E_{c,s}$      | 5.0 dB at $P_s = 10^{-4}$  |

Table 3.1: Summarization of results obtained for SPTC and CAC.

# 3.5 Comparison Between Different Programming Languages Used for Simulations

In this thesis, three programming languages, Matlab version 9.4, Python version 3.6.4 and Julia version 0.6 have been used to perform various simulations. One of the objectives of this thesis is to compare among those three languages and determine which language is more suitable to study error correction coding theory. In order to compare, all the programs written in those languages has been made as similar to each other as possible in terms of syntax. For simulation, an object containing methods for encoding and decoding has been created and vectorized operations are used. While Matlab and Python are fully objectoriented language, Julia is not fully object-oriented in the conventional structure. In Julia, an object is called a composite type and is defined as Struct. But unlike Python and Matlab, in Julia, the methods are declared outside of Struct and then are linked to that Struct. To compare simulation time between Matlab, Python, and Julia, SPTC using the shape and QPSK constellation shown in Fig. 2.10 has been used as a reference and the simulations are performed using the same hardware. To take into account of randomness while generating bits, the average of 5 simulation time for each of the language has been considered. For SNR 0 to 7, the average simulation time required to generate BER and SER curves while counting 100 errors at each SNR is presented in Table 3.2.

| Language | Version | Average Simulation Time (second) |
|----------|---------|----------------------------------|
| Matlab   | 9.4     | 380.55                           |
| Python   | 3.6.4   | 487.95                           |
| Julia    | 0.6     | 155.40                           |

Table 3.2: Average Simulation Times for Different programming Languages.

From Table 3.2, it can be seen that Julia is twice faster than Matlab and Python. This high speed of Julia can be useful for calculating the BER by counting a large number of errors at high SNR. Despite Julia being faster than the other two languages it has some issues. As a fairly new language, the documentation for Julia is not as rich as Matlab or Python. Recent release Julia's stable version 1.1.1 has made some of the functions from version 0.6 deprecated. Another notable issue is while using Julia in Atom IDE, random crashes have been faced during simulations.

Both Python and Matlab have stable IDE, well-defined documentation and similar simulation speed while Julia is a lot faster than the other two. However, Python and Julia are open-source while Matlab can be expensive for students. Julia can be used in the study of error correction coding when simulation speed is an important requirement and Python can be used when stability during simulation is needed. Examining the different aspects of these programming languages, Julia is recommended among Matlab, Python, and Julia for the study of error correction coding because of its high simulation speed.

#### CHAPTER 4

#### PERFORMANCE OF CODES WITH LARGER STATES

In this chapter, an approach is presented for increasing the free Euclidean distance for Constellation Arithmetic Code by increasing the number of states during encoding. By exploiting the property of state variable, a modification in the encoding operation has been proposed to increase the number of states. Though this modification increases the  $d_{\text{free}}^2$ , it fails to provide any coding gain. Therefore this chapter provides a possible foundation for one of the future area for conducting research in Constellation Arithmetic Code.

#### 4.1 Study the Performance of Codes for Different number of States:

For Constellation Arithmetic Code, the number of states is equal to the number of points in the signal space. From (2.2), the modulus operation enforces the state variable to stay between 0 to M - 1. By increasing the number of states, it is possible to create more possible paths in the trellis which can. The number of states can be changed by modifying (2.2) to :

$$j_{i+1} = j_i + r_i \pmod{N_s}$$
 where  $N_s$  is number of state (4.1)

This modification allows for the increment of the possible number of paths in the trellis. But just only by increasing the number of states doesn't increase the free Euclidean distance. Because, if the branches tend to reach the state variables which are in the close vicinity then the distance between the branches will not increase. So a multiplicative factor  $\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}_{>0}$  is introduced to calculate the state variable which will enforce the branches to disperse and therefore increasing the free Euclidean distance.

$$j_{i+1} = \alpha(j_i + r_i) \pmod{N_s}$$
 where  $N_s$  is number of state (4.2)

Using these proposed modifications it is possible to increase the  $d_{\text{free}}^2$  for codes in a given

constellation by increasing  $N_s$  and finding  $\alpha$  for that  $N_s$ . Table 4.1 contains the  $d_{\text{free}}^2$  for the different number of  $N_s$  and  $\alpha$ . From this table, it can be seen that the asymptotic coding gain can be increased by increasing  $N_s$  and using an appropriate  $\alpha$  for a code in a given constellation. For Constellation Arithmetic Code on QPSK constellation using bit assignment shown in Fig. 2.16, a trellis of consisting of 13 number of states and  $\alpha = 3$  is shown in Fig. 4.1. In this Fig. the input and parity symbols associated with each branch are placed in the left of the initial state of that branch. Starting from left, moving to right each input and parity symbol pair S/R corresponds to the branches selected from top to bottom. For example, located at the left of initial state 0, 2/2 corresponds to the third branch which has started at initial state 0 and ended at state 6. Now for this trellis, the pair of paths that corresponded to  $d_{\text{free}}^2$  is shown in Fig. 4.2 by black solid lines. From those paths, the free Euclidean distance

$$d_{\text{free}}^2 = d_e^2(0,1) + d_e^2(0,1) + d_e^2(0,2) + d_e^2(0,1) +$$

Though increasing the  $N_s$  increases  $d_{\text{free}}^2$ , in this thesis no coding gain has been found for larger  $d_{\text{free}}^2$  when  $N_s > M$  where M is the number of points in the signal constellation. In Fig. 4.3 performances of CAC using 16QAM constellation with bit assignment from Fig. 2.20 for  $N_s = 16$  with  $d_{\text{free}}^2 = 28E_{c,s}$ ,  $N_s = 64$  with  $d_{\text{free}}^2 = 68E_{c,s}$  and  $N_s = 128$  with  $d_{\text{free}}^2 = 120E_{c,s}$  is shown. From the simulation results, it can be seen that no coding gain has been achieved.



Fig. 4.1: Trellis structure for Constellation Arithmetic Code using QPSK constellation for  $\alpha = 3$  and  $N_s = 13$ .



Fig. 4.2: Branches (black solid line) on the trellis that results in  $d_{\text{free}}^2$  for CAC on QPSK constellation shown in Fig. 3.6.

| constellation | Number of States, $N_s$ | α  | $d_{\rm free}^2$ | Asymptotic Coding Gain (dB) |
|---------------|-------------------------|----|------------------|-----------------------------|
| QPSK          | 4                       | 1  | $12E_{c,s}$      | 1.7609                      |
| QPSK          | 4                       | 1  | $16E_{c,s}$      | 3.0103                      |
| QPSK          | 4                       | 1  | $20E_{c,s}$      | 3.9794                      |
| QPSK          | 11                      | 6  | $24E_{c,s}$      | 4.7712                      |
| QPSK          | 12                      | 1  | $32E_{c,s}$      | 6.0206                      |
| QPSK          | 13                      | 3  | $28E_{c,s}$      | 5.4407                      |
| QPSK          | 15                      | 7  | $24E_{c,s}$      | 4.7712                      |
| QPSK          | 16                      | 7  | $24E_{c,s}$      | 4.7712                      |
| QPSK          | 17                      | 3  | $28E_{c,s}$      | 5.4407                      |
| QPSK          | 17                      | 6  | $24E_{c,s}$      | 4.7712                      |
| QPSK          | 32                      | 7  | $32E_{c,s}$      | 6.0206                      |
| QPSK          | 32                      | 9  | $36E_{c,s}$      | 6.5321                      |
| QPSK          | 32                      | 11 | $36E_{c,s}$      | 6.5321                      |
| 16QAM         | 16                      | 1  | $28E_{c,s}$      | 5.4407                      |
| 16QAM         | 32                      | 3  | $36E_{c,s}$      | 6.5321                      |
| 16QAM         | 32                      | 5  | $48E_{c,s}$      | 7.7815                      |
| 16QAM         | 32                      | 11 | $36E_{c,s}$      | 6.5321                      |
| 16QAM         | 32                      | 13 | $36E_{c,s}$      | 6.5321                      |
| 16QAM         | 32                      | 19 | $36E_{c,s}$      | 6.5321                      |
| 16QAM         | 32                      | 27 | $36E_{c,s}$      | 6.5321                      |
| 16QAM         | 64                      | 5  | $68E_{c,s}$      | 9.2942                      |
| 16QAM         | 64                      | 11 | $52E_{c,s}$      | 8.1291                      |
| 16QAM         | 64                      | 19 | $52E_{c,s}$      | 8.1291                      |
| 16QAM         | 64                      | 29 | $60E_{c,s}$      | 8.7506                      |
| 16QAM         | 64                      | 35 | $64E_{c,s}$      | 9.0309                      |
| 16QAM         | 64                      | 37 | $52E_{c,s}$      | 8.1291                      |
| 16QAM         | 64                      | 45 | $60E_{c,s}$      | 8.7506                      |
| 16QAM         | 128                     | 19 | $100E_{c,s}$     | 10.9691                     |
| 16QAM         | 128                     | 23 | $88E_{c,s}$      | 10.4139                     |
| 16QAM         | 128                     | 39 | $120E_{c,s}$     | 11.7609                     |
| 16QAM         | 128                     | 53 | $92E_{c,s}$      | 10.6070                     |
| 64QAM         | 64                      | 1  | 28 $E_{c,s}$     | 5.4407                      |
| 256QAM        | 256                     | 1  | $28 E_{c,s}$     | 5.4407                      |

Table 4.1: Free Euclidean Distance and Asymptotic Coding Gain for Different Number ofStates.



Fig. 4.3: Simulation results for rate 1/2 CAC-16QAM using different number of states.

The proposed method in this section fails to provide coding gain but it can be used as an insight for increasing the coding gain by increasing the number of states. Therefore further research is required in topic to find a viable solution that provides coding gain by increasing the number of states for CAC on any constellation.

# 4.2 Comparison Between The Performances of Some Well Known TCM and CAC

In TCM a convolutional encoder is used to encode the input bits and then the coded bits are mapped to a larger signal constellation. However, in CAC, each input symbol is encoded to generate a parity symbol. Therefore in this section, the comparison between TCM and CAC is done for the codes with the same *spectral efficiency*. The spectral efficiency is the number of information bits transmitted by each symbol [9]. The Trellis Codes for 8-PSK uses a rate 2/3 convolutional encoder followed by mapping to an 8-PSK signal constellation. So each symbol carries 2 information bits. For the rate 1/2 CAC on 16QAM constellation, each symbol carries 2 information bit. Therefore the rate 1/2 CAC on 16QAM constellation and the Trellis Codes for 8-PSK have spectral efficiency of 2. Table 4.2 contains the comparison between the rate 1/2 CAC on 16QAM constellation and the Trellis Codes for 8-PSK [9] using asymptotic coding gain for different number of states.

| Number of States | Asymptotic Coding Gain (dB) (coded/uncoded) |                                 |  |
|------------------|---|---------------------------------|--|
|                  | 8-PSK/4-PSK                                 | $16 \mathrm{QAM}/\mathrm{QPSK}$ |  |
| 16               | 4.1   | 5.44                            |  |
| 32               | 4.6   | 7.7                             |  |
| 64               | 5.0   | 8.12                            |  |
| 128              | 5.2   | 10.4                            |  |

Table 4.2: Comparison Between Rate 1/2 CAC on 16QAM Constellation and Trellis Codes for 8-PSK using Asymptotic Coding Gain.

## CHAPTER 5

### CONCLUSION AND FUTURE WORK

The research presented in this thesis provides a detailed study of Signal Point Target Code. By investigating various aspects of SPTC, the proposed code has been extended for larger signal constellations, different rates, and larger states. The findings from this work provide directions for future research in SPTC.

#### 5.1 Contribution

The contributions of this thesis can be summarized as given below:

- The operation of the SPTC has been described by introducing a notation.
- The relation between the employed shape and the performance of SPTC has been examined using free Euclidean distance. For different shapes, the performance of SPTC has been evaluated on different QAM signal constellations.
- An alternative of SPTC, called Constellation Arithmetic Code has been presented.
- The relation between the bit assignment in the signal constellation and the performance of CAC has been examined using free Euclidean distance. Using different bit assignments and M-ary QAM signal constellations, the performance of CAC has been evaluated.
- A method for bit assignment in the signal constellation has been proposed that provides coding gains for CAC compared to performances of SPTC examined in this thesis.
- Using the CAC, two methods of increasing the rate of codes have been proposed and their performances for different rates have been simulated.

- The free Euclidean distances and asymptotic coding gains of CAC for larger number of states has been calculated. A method for increasing  $d_{\text{free}}^2$  using larger number of states has been proposed. Form proposed method, one possible future research avenue for the code has been outlined.
- A suitable language among Matlab, Python, and Julia has been determined for the study of error correction coding by considering simulation speed. Different aspects of these programming languages have been discussed. By calculating average simulation speed, it has been found that Julia is the fastest and most suitable language among those three.

#### 5.2 Conclusion

Both SPTC and CAC provides coding gain compared to the performance of uncoded modulation. The coding gain can be increased for SPTC by employing shapes that provide larger free Euclidean distance and for CAC by using bit assignments which results in larger free Euclidean distance. In this thesis, for QPSK constellation the maximum coding gain found for SPTC is 3 dB and for CAC is 3.5 dB. The shape used for SPTC 16QAM provides a coding gain of 2.75 while for CAC up to of 5 dB coding gain has been achieved. The proposed method for bit assignment in CAC for 64QAM and 256QAM provides good coding gain. From the proposed methods of increasing rates, SIE provides coding gain for all codes. Among Matlab, Python, and Julia, Julia has been found twice faster than the other two languages in terms of simulation speed. Therefore Julia has been selected as a suitable language for studying error correction coding between those three. Though the proposed method for increasing the number of states increases the free Euclidean distance and asymptotic coding gain, it fails to provide any coding gain compared to the performance of CAC using M number of states.

#### 5.3 Future Work

The future work for this thesis includes finding the best shape for SPTC and bit

assignment for CAC on any given constellation. Further research is needed to develop a method similar to set partitioning used in TCM in order to maximize the free Euclidean distance on the trellis. As the PPE provides good coding gain for some selected codes, this method should be investigated further. The proposed method for increasing number of states needs to be studied more to find out why it failed to provide coding gain.

Overall, by providing a detailed study of the Signal Point Target code and by exploring and extending various attributes of the proposed codes, the objectives of this thesis have been investigated.

#### REFERENCES

- C. E. Shannon, "A mathematical theory of communication," Bell Sys. Tech. Journal, vol. 27, no. 3, pp. 379–423, July 1948.
- [2] R. Gallager, "Low-density parity-check codes," IRE Tran. Inf. Theory, vol. 8, no. 1, pp. 21–28, January 1962.
- [3] C. Berrou and A. Glavieux, "Near optimum error correcting coding and decoding: turbo-codes," *IEEE Trans. Commun.*, vol. 44, no. 10, pp. 1261–1271, Oct 1996.
- [4] E. Arikan, "Channel polarization: A method for constructing capacity-achieving codes for symmetric binary-input memoryless channels," *IEEE Trans. Inf. Theory*, vol. 55, no. 7, pp. 3051–3073, July 2009.
- [5] G. Ungerboeck, "Channel coding with multilevel/phase signals," *IEEE Trans. Inf. Theory*, vol. 28, no. 1, pp. 55–67, January 1982.
- [6] J. Sodha, "Rotating signal point shape code," in *Intelligent Computing*. Springer International Publishing, 2019, pp. 876–880.
- [7] J. Sodha and T. Moon, "Signal point target code," in *Proc. IEEE 62nd IMWSCAS* (Accepted), Aug 2019.
- [8] J. Sodha and A. Als, "Shape nature of error-control codes," Elsevier Sig. Process. Journal, vol. 83, no. 7, pp. 1457 – 1465, 2003.
- [9] T. Moon, Error correction coding : mathematical methods and algorithms. Hoboken, N.J: Wiley-Interscience, 2005.
- [10] J. Proakis and M. Salehi, *Digital Communications*. McGraw-Hill, 2008.

APPENDICES

# APPENDIX A

# Q function

Q(x) is the area under the tail of a standard normal distribution. If X is a standard Gaussian random variable then Q(x) is the probability that X is greater than x, so

$$\begin{aligned} Q(x) &= P(X > x) \\ &= 1 - P(X \le x) \\ &= 1 - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{x} e^{-\frac{u^2}{2}} du \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{x}^{\infty} e^{-\frac{u^2}{2}} du \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{2}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{x}^{\infty} e^{-\frac{u^2}{2}} du \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{2}{\sqrt{\pi}} \int_{\frac{x}{\sqrt{2}}}^{\infty} e^{-t^2} dt \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \operatorname{erfc}\left(\frac{x}{\sqrt{2}}\right). \end{aligned}$$

#### APPENDIX B

Code

## B.1 Matlab Code

#### **Main Function**

```
1 clc;
2 clear all;
3 close all;
4 tic
5 %Initialize
6 docnostanttarget=0;
                                     % 0 for same target point 1 for ...
      rotating target point
7 M=4;
                                    %constellation size
8 doMquam=0;
                                     %Mquam
9 doShapeCode=1;
10 nerrortocount=100;
                                   %number of error to count at each SNR
11 SNRrange=0:1:8;
12 SNRrangeex=0:1:8;
13 SNRrangetheo=0:1:14;
14 GraphPsrange=10^-6;
15 A=1;
16 %create object
17 approach=2;
                                %approach=1 using sum table;
18
                                %approach=2 using mod sum ;
                                %approach=3 dr Sodha's approach
19
20 shapecode_object=shapecode(docnostanttarget,M,A,approach);
shapecode_object.setdecoderinfo(1);
                                                     % 1=plot trellis ...
      structure of decoder (only for qpsk)
22 shapecode_object.resetshapecoder();
23 shapecode_object.resetshapedecoder();
24 R=1;
                               %rate of uncoded symbol
25 Eb=2/3*A^2*(M-1)/(shapecode_object.Nbits*R)
                                                                           . . .
      %energy per bit
26
27 Es=shapecode_object.Nbits*Eb*R; %Energy of uncoded symbol
^{28}
29 Esscale=sqrt(3*Es/(2*(M-1)));
30 Rcoded=.5;
                                   %rate of coded symbol
31 %Escoded=sqrt(shapecode_object.Nbits*Eb*Rcoded*3/(2*(M-1)));
                                                                      . . .
      %Coded Amplitude
32 Escoded=2/3*(shapecode_object.M-1)*A^2;
_{33}\, %ploting thoeritical SNR (Plots are consistant with Figure 5-2-16 Digital \ldots
      Communication By John G.Proakis)
```

```
34 snrctr=0;
35
36
  for SNR=SNRrangetheo
       %fprintf('Theoritical SNR=%d\n', SNR)
37
       snrctr=snrctr+1;
38
       N0=Eb*10^ (-SNR/10);
39
       EbN0=Eb/N0;
40
       theorprobQPSK(snrctr) = 1 - (1-qf(sqrt(2*EbN0)))^2;
41
       %theorprobBPSK(snrctr) = qf(sqrt(2*EbN0));
42
       theoprobMquam(snrctr) = (1 - (1 - 2 * (1 - \text{sqrt} (1/M)) \dots)
43
                  *qf(sqrt((3/(M-1))*shapecode_object.Nbits*EbN0)))^2);
44
45 end
46
47 legendstrs={};
48 lct=1;
49 legendstrs{lct} = 'QPSK(th) symbol';
50 %legendstrs{lct+1} = 'BPSK(th) symbol';
51 %legendstrs{lct+2} = '64QAM(th) symbol';
52 %legendstrs{lct+1} = '16QAM(th) symbol';
53 lct=2;
54 if (doMquam)
       legendstrs{lct} = '16QAM(ex) symbol';
55
       lct=lct+1;
56
       legendstrs{lct}='16QAM(ex) bit';
57
       lct=lct+1;
58
59 end
60
61 if (doShapeCode)
62
       legendstrs{lct} = 'SPTC QPSK(symbol) state 10';
       lct=lct+1;
63
       legendstrs{lct} = 'SPTC QPSK(bit) state 10';
64
65 end
66 figure;
67 semilogy (SNRrangetheo, theorprobQPSK, 'b:', 'linewidth', 2); hold on;
68 %semilogy(SNRrangetheo,theorprobBPSK,'g:','linewidth',2);
69 %semilogy(SNRrangetheo,theoprobMquam,'k:','linewidth',2);
70 xticks(SNRrangetheo)
71 yticks([10^-6 10^-5 10^-4 10^-3 10^-2 10^-1 10^-0])
72 ylim([GraphPsrange 10^-0])
73 set(gca, 'fontsize', 15)
74 set(gcf, 'Position', [2357 152 821 624])
75 xlabel('SNR_{db}')
76 ylabel('P_s')
77 grid on
78
  %ploting Uncoded SNR (Plots are consistant with Figure 5-2-16 Digital ...
       Communication By John G.Proakis)
79 if (doMquam)
       snrctr=0;
80
81
       for SNR=SNRrangeex
           fprintf('Experimental SNR=%d\n', SNR)
82
           snrctr=snrctr+1;
83
           N0=Eb*10^ (-SNR/10);
84
           EbN0=Eb/N0;
85
86
           sigma=sqrt(N0/2);
87
           errctr(snrctr)=0;
88
           errctr_bits(snrctr)=0;
```

```
nsyms(snrctr)=0;
89
            while(errctr(snrctr)<nerrortocount)</pre>
90
91
                 nsyms(snrctr) =nsyms(snrctr)+1;
92
                 bits=randombits(shapecode_object.Nbits);
93
                 symno=Binary2Decimal(bits);
94
95
                 %constpts=Esscale*shapecode_object.const_pts(:,symno+1);
96
                 constpts=shapecode_object.const_pts(:,symno+1);
97
98
99
                 noise=sigma*randn(1,2);
100
                 r(1) = constpts(1) + noise(1);
101
                 r(2) = constpts(2) + noise(2);
102
103
104
                 decodesymno=mquamdemod(r,shapecode_object.const_pts,....
                 shapecode_object.const_axis);
105
106
                 if(decodesymno≠symno)
107
                     errctr(snrctr)=errctr(snrctr)+1;
108
109
                     errctr_bits(snrctr) = errctr_bits(snrctr) + sum(bits ≠ ...
                          fliplr(de2bi(decodesymno,shapecode_object.Nbits)));
110
                 end
            end
111
        end
112
   end %if do Mquam
113
114
115
    if (doMquam)
116
       semilogy(SNRrangeex,errctr ./ nsyms,'r','linewidth',2);
       semilogy(SNRrangeex,(errctr_bits./(shapecode_object.Nbits*nsyms)),...
117
             'r:','linewidth',2);
118
   end
119
120
121
   Eb=Escoded/(Rcoded*log2(shapecode_object.M))
122
123
   if (doShapeCode)
124
        snrctr=0;
125
        for SNR=SNRrange
126
            fprintf('ShapeCode SNR=%d\n',SNR)
127
128
129
            snrctr=snrctr+1;
130
            %N0=Eb*10^(-(SNR-10*log10(Rcoded))/10);
            N0=Eb*10^(-(SNR)/10);
131
132
            EbN0=Eb/N0;
            sigma=sqrt(N0/2);
                                                  %calculate sigma for given SNR
133
134
            errctr_coded(snrctr)=0;
135
            errctr_bits_coded(snrctr)=0;
136
            nsyms_coded(snrctr)=0;
137
            while (errctr_coded(snrctr)<nerrortocount)</pre>
                 nsyms_coded(snrctr)=nsyms_coded(snrctr)+1;
                                                                    %calculate ...
138
                     number of genarted symbols
139
140
141
                 if(0)
```

| 142 |             | <pre>if (rem(nsyms_coded(snrctr),10000)==0 &amp;&amp;   (nsyms_coded(snrctr) &gt; 10000))</pre>  |   |
|-----|-------------|--|---|
| 143 |             | $for int f(!number of symbol= d \n! nsw$   | ms coded (sprctr))                              |
| 140 |             | and  | mbleoded (billeet))                             |
| 144 |             | ond  |   |
| 140 |             | ena  |   |
| 146 |             |  |   |
| 147 |             |  |   |
| 148 |             | <pre>bits=randombits(shapecode_object.Nbits);     bits</pre>   | %genarte random                                 |
| 149 |             | [sym1,sym2]=shapecode_object.encode(bits)  | ); %encode the bits                             |
| 150 |             |  |   |
| 151 |             | <pre>shapecode_object.bitsqueuein(bits);     to compare the results</pre>  | %save the bits                                  |
| 152 |             | -  |   |
| 153 |             | <pre>%s1=Escoded*shapecode_object.const_pts(:</pre>  | ,svm1+1);                                       |
|     |             | <pre>%genrate signal points to transmit (s</pre>   | symbol)   |
| 154 |             | %genrate signal points to transmit (   | ,Sym2+1);<br>(parity)                           |
| 155 |             | <pre>s1=shapecode_object.const_pts(:,sym1+1);</pre>  |   |
| 156 |             | <pre>s2=shapecode_object.const_pts(:,sym2+1);</pre>  |   |
| 157 |             |  |   |
| 158 |             | r1=s1+sigma*randn(2,1);  | %add noise                                      |
| 159 |             | r2=s2+sigma*randn(2,1);  | %add noise                                      |
| 160 |             |  |   |
| 161 |             | <pre>%[bitsout,decodeout]=shapecode_object.vit</pre>   | cerbishapedecode                                |
| 162 | (1          | r1/Escoded,r2/Escoded); %decode  | -   |
| 163 |             | [bitsout, decodeout]=shapecode_object.vite   | erbishapedecode(r1,r2);                         |
| 164 |             |  |   |
| 165 |             | if(decodeout)  |   |
| 166 |             | inbits=shapecode_object.bitqueueout(   | );  |
| 167 |             |  |   |
| 168 |             | if(0)  |   |
| 169 |             | if (isequal(inbits.bitsout)==0)  |   |
| 170 |             | (  |   |
| 171 |             | <pre>%save('data shapecode.mat')</pre>   | save workspace to file                          |
| 172 |             | fprintf(!\nCoded_SNB=%d_Error  | ibave workspace co fife                         |
| 112 |             | No=%d\n! SNP errctr coded (snr   | $r_{r}$   |
| 173 | 0           | forint f ( Input Bit s=%d%d%d%d  |   |
| 175 | °<br>Output | $-Bite= \frac{2}{2} \frac{d^2}{d^2} \frac$ |   |
| 174 | 2 Output    | inhite(3) $inhite(4)$ $hiteout(1)$ $hiteout(2)$  | ) hitsout (3) hitsout ( $\Lambda$ )).           |
| 175 | 0           | and  | , Diesoue (5), Diesoue (4)),                    |
| 175 |             | end  |   |
| 170 |             | ena  |   |
| 177 |             |  |   |
| 178 |             |  |   |
| 179 |             |  |   |
| 180 |             | errctr_coded(snrctr)=errctr_coded(sn:<br>bitsout); %calculate num  | rcur)+any(inbits ≠<br>nber of symbol error      |
| 181 |             | errctr_bits_coded(snrctr) = errctr_b:<br>sum(inbits ≠ bitsout); %calcul  | its_coded(snrctr) +<br>Late number of bit error |
| 182 |             | end  |   |
| 183 |             |  |   |
| 184 | 00          | if (errctr_coded(snrctr)≠0 &&  |   |
|     | (errct      | tr_coded(snrctr)/nsyms_coded(snrctr))≤GraphE   | Psrange)  |
| 185 | 00          | break  |   |
| 186 | 00          | end  |   |
| 187 |             | % errctr_coded(snrctr)   |   |
| 1   |             |  |   |

```
188
            end %while
   ÷
              if ((errctr_coded(snrctr)/nsyms_coded(snrctr)) < GraphPsrange)
189
190
   8
                  break;
191
   2
              end
192
193 if (doShapeCode)
194
        semilogy((0:1:(length(errctr_coded)-1)),....
195
        (errctr_coded./nsyms_coded), 'c', 'linewidth', 2);
196
        semilogy((0:1:(length(errctr_coded)-1)),....
197
        (errctr_bits_coded./(shapecode_object.Nbits*nsyms_coded)),....
198
        'c:','linewidth',2)
199
        legend(legendstrs)
200
        pause(0.2)
201
202
        %saveas(gcf,'64QAMshapecodeBERrate12approach2','pdf');
203 end
204
205
206
        end %for SNRRange
207 end %doshapecode
208
209 toc
210 %saveas(gcf,'qpskshapecodeBERrate12approach2state10mult3march20','pdf');
211 %saveas(gcf,'16quamshapecodeBERrate12approach3march17','pdf');
212 %save('data_shapecodeqpskapproach2state10mult3march20.mat')
```

# **Q** function

```
1 function q=qf(x)
2 q=.5*erfc(x/sqrt(2));
```

### Function for Binary to Decimal Conversion

```
1 function symbol=Binary2Decimal(k)
2 symbol=0;
3 for ind=1:1:length(k)
4 symbol=symbol+k(ind)*2^(length(k)-ind);
5 end
```

#### Decoder for Uncoded QAM

```
1 function symbol=mquamdemod(r,const_ptsf,const_axis)
```

```
2 [¬,Ix]=min(abs(r(1)-const_axis));
```

```
3 [¬,Iy]=min(abs(r(2)-const_axis));
```

```
4 indxx=const_axis(Ix);
```

- 5 indyy=const\_axis(Iy);
- 6 d=[indxx indyy];
- 7 [¬,Locb]=ismember(const\_ptsf',d,'rows');
- s symbol=find(Locb==1)-1;

# **Random Bit Generator Function**

```
1 function bits=randombits(k)
```

2 bits=double(rand(1,k) $\geq$ .5);

# Shape Code Object

| 1  | <pre>classdef shapecode&lt; handle</pre> |  |
|----|--|--|
| 2  | properties (Constant)                    |  |
| 3  | viterbiwindowwidth=20;                   |  |
| 4  | end                                      |  |
| 5  | properties                               |  |
| 6  | М  |  |
| 7  | A  |  |
| 8  | Nstate                                   |  |
| 9  | Nepochs                                  |  |
| 10 | Nbits                                    |  |
| 11 | cumrotoffset                             |  |
| 12 | fromtodist                               |  |
| 13 | const_pts                                |  |
| 14 | const_axis                               |  |
| 15 | xcycle                                   |  |
| 16 | sumrotcount                              | <pre>% cumulation of rotations(states)</pre> |
| 17 | epoch                                    |  |
| 18 | doconstanttarget                         | <pre>% whether target rotation moves</pre>   |
| 19 | trellisoutput                            |  |
| 20 | inputbits                                |  |
| 21 | fromtostate                              |  |
| 22 | metrics                                  |  |
| 23 | nextmetrics                              |  |
| 24 | epoch_decode                             |  |
| 25 | prevstatearray                           |  |
| 26 | front                                    |  |
| 27 | countbranches                            |  |
| 28 | beststate                                |  |
| 29 | bitqueue                                 |  |
| 30 | bitqueuefront                            |  |
| 31 | bitqueueback                             |  |
| 32 | rotA                                     |  |
| 33 | vec                                      |  |
| 34 | AddRot                                   |  |
| 35 | testbits                                 |  |

```
approach
36
           multipliedfactor
37
38
       end
39
   %_
40
41
       methods
           function obj=shapecode(doconstanttarget,M,A,approach)
42
               obj.A=A;
43
               obj.doconstanttarget=doconstanttarget;
44
               obj.M=M;
45
               obj.Nstate=obj.M;
46
               obj.Nstate=6;
47
               obj.Nepochs=obj.M;
48
               obj.Nbits=log2(obj.M);
49
               obj.approach=approach;
50
               obj.multipliedfactor=1;
51
52
               %obj.multipliedfactor=1;
               if (obj.approach==3 && obj.M==16)
53
               %%% Dr Sodha's constellation point for 16 quam
54
55
                obj.const_pts=[-3 -3;-3 -1;-3 3;-3 1;-1 -3;-1 -1;-1 3;-1 1;3 ...
56
                    -3;3 -1;3 3;3 1;1 -3;1 -1;1 3;1 1]'; %points in the ...
                    constellation
                obj.const_axis=[-3 -1 3 1];
57
58
59
               elseif (obj.approach==3 && obj.M==4)
60
               %%% Dr Sodha's constellation point for 16 quam
61
62
                obj.const_pts=[-1 -1;1 -1;-1 1;1 1]'; %points in the ...
63
                    constellation
                obj.const_axis=[-1 1];
64
65
               else
66
               %%% My constellation point for square M quam
67
68
               obj.const_axis=-(2^(obj.Nbits/2)-1):2:2^(obj.Nbits/2)-1;
69
               obj.const_pts=[kron(ones(1,2^(obj.Nbits/2)),obj.const_axis); ...
70
                   kron(obj.const_axis,ones(1,2^(obj.Nbits/2)))];
               end
71
               if (obj.M==16)
72
73
               obj.rotA=[0 7 15 8 1 6 14 9 3 4 12 11 2 5 13 10];
                                                                         %from ...
                   dr Sodha's code
               obj.vec=[2 6 14 10 11 15 7 3 1 5 13 9 8 12 4 0];
                                                                         %from ...
74
                   dr Sodha's code
75
               end
76
               obj.const_pts=obj.const_pts*obj.A;
               obj.const_axis=obj.const_axis*obj.A;
77
78
               if (obj.M==4)
79
               obj.rotA=[0 1 3 2];
                                       %from dr Sodha's code
80
                                       %from dr Sodha's code
               obj.vec=[2 3 1 0];
81
               end
82
83
84
               obj.AddRot=CodeTrellis(obj);
                                                                         % sum ...
                   table from dr Sodha's code
```

| 1       |          |                                   |  |
|---------|----------|-----------------------------------|--|
| 85      |          |                                   |  |
| 86      |          |                                   |  |
| 87      |          | %obj.cumrotoffset=hank            | el(U:1:obj.M-1,[obj.M-1 U:1:obj.M-2]); |
| 88      |          | obj.cumrotofiset=obj.A            | ddRot;                                 |
| 89      |          | %obj.fromtodist=hankel            | (U:1:obj.M-1,[obj.M-1 U:1:obj.M-2]);   |
| 90      |          | obj.fromtodist=[0 7 15            | 8 1 6 14 9 3 4 12 11 2 5 13 10 ;       |
| 91      |          | 9 0 8 1                           | 1 10 15 7 2 12 13 5 4 11 14 6 3 ;      |
| 92      |          | 1 8 0                             | 9 2 7 15 10 4 5 13 12 3 6 14 11;       |
| 93      |          | 8 15 7                            | 0 9 14 6 1 11 12 4 3 10 13 5 2;        |
| $^{94}$ |          | 15 6 1                            | 4 7 0 5 13 8 2 3 11 10 1 4 12 9;       |
| 95      |          | 10 1 9                            | 2 11 0 8 3 13 14 6 5 12 15 7 4;        |
| 96      |          | 2 9 1                             | 10 3 8 0 11 5 6 14 13 4 7 15 12;       |
| 97      |          | 7 14 6                            | 15 8 13 5 0 10 11 3 2 9 12 4 1;        |
| 98      |          | 13 4 1                            | 2 5 14 3 11 6 0 1 9 8 15 2 10 7;       |
| 99      |          | 12 3 1                            | 1 4 13 2 10 5 15 0 8 7 14 1 9 6;       |
| 100     |          | 4 11 3                            | 12 5 10 2 13 7 8 0 15 6 9 1 14;        |
| 101     |          | 5 12 4                            | 13 6 11 3 14 8 9 1 0 7 10 2 15;        |
| 102     |          | 14 5 1.                           | 3 6 15 4 12 7 1 2 10 9 0 3 11 8;       |
| 103     |          | 11 2 1                            | 0 4 12 1 9 4 14 15 7 6 13 0 8 5;       |
| 104     |          | 3 10 2                            | 11 4 9 1 12 6 7 15 14 5 8 0 13;        |
| 105     |          | 6 13 5                            | 14 7 12 4 15 9 0 2 1 8 11 3 0 ];       |
| 106     |          |                                   |  |
| 107     |          | if (¬doconstanttarget)            |  |
| 108     |          | if (obj.approach=                 | =3)                                    |
| 109     |          | obj.xcvcle=obj.ro                 | tA: %set the target point              |
| 110     |          | else                              | ,                                      |
| 111     |          | obj.xcvcle=0:1:ob                 | i.M-1;                                 |
| 112     |          | end                               |  |
| 113     |          | else                              |  |
| 114     |          | obi.xcvcle=0:                     |  |
| 115     |          | end                               |  |
| 116     |          | Circ                              |  |
| 117     |          | obi epoch=0.                      | &number of epoch                       |
| 118     |          | obj.epoen o,                      | stotal number of previous              |
| 110     |          | rotation                          | veceti namber of previous              |
| 119     |          | rocación                          |  |
| 120     |          |                                   |  |
| 121     |          | end %end of contructor            |  |
| 122     | 8        |                                   |  |
| 123     | * set    | AddRot Matrix                     |  |
| 124     |          |                                   |  |
| 125     |          |                                   |  |
| 126     |          |                                   |  |
| 120     | 2        | function tomp-Intiplication       | ac(obi N)                              |
| 120     | 0<br>0-  | for $r=0.1.N-1$                   |  |
| 128     | -o<br>9- | $for = 0 \cdot 1 \cdot N \cdot 1$ |  |
| 129     | б<br>0_  |                                   | ) = 0 -                                |
| 130     | б<br>0.  | temp(r+1,C+1                      | ) — ( ;                                |
| 131     | б<br>о_  | ena                               |  |
| 132     | 6        | ena                               |  |
| 133     | 96       | end                               |  |
| 134     |          | · · · · · · · · · ·               |  |
| 135     |          | tunction temp=CircularShif        | t(obj,A,shift)                         |
| 136     |          | temp=ones(1,length(obj            | .vec));                                |
| 137     |          |                                   |  |
| 138     |          | for $r=0:1:length(A)-1$           |  |
| 139     |          |                                   |  |
|         |          |                                   |  |
```
140
                     if ((r+shift)<obj.M)</pre>
141
142
                          temp(r+1) = A(r+1+shift);
143
                     else
144
145
                          temp(r+1)=A(r+1+shift-obj.M);
146
                     end
147
                 end
             end
148
149
             function AddRot=InsertVector(obj,AddRot,A,index,shift)
150
                 newvec=obj.CircularShift(A, shift);
151
                 for c=0:1:length(A)-1
152
                     AddRot(index, c+1) = newvec(c+1);
153
154
                 end
155
             end
156
157
             function temp=CodeTrellis(obj)
158
                 temp=ones(obj.M,obj.M);
159
160
                 for ind=0:1:length(obj.vec)-1
161
                     temp=obj.InsertVector(temp,obj.vec,obj.vec(ind+1)+1,ind);
162
                 end
            end
163
164
165
           function resetshapecoder(obj)
166
167
               obj.epoch=0;
168
               obj.sumrotcount=0;
169
           end
     %___
170
         function resetshapedecoder(obj)
171
            obj.epoch_decode=0;
172
173
            obj.front=0;
                                          % index into prevstatearray
174
             obj.countbranches=0;
             obj.bitqueuefront=0;
175
176
             obj.bitqueueback=0;
177
         end
    %_
178
         function m=computemetric(obj,r1,r2,output)
179
180
            out11=output(1,1);
181
            out12=output(1,2);
182
            out21=output(2,1);
            out22=output(2,2);
183
            n1=(r1(1)-out11)^2+(r1(2)-out21)^2;
184
            n2=(r2(1)-out12)^2+(r2(2)-out22)^2;
185
186
            m=n1+n2;
187
         end
188
              function [bitsout,decodeout]=viterbishapedecode(obj,r1,r2)
189
                  beststatemetric=inf;
190
                  for state=0:obj.Nstate-1
191
192
                     nextmetricbest=inf;
193
                     for prevstate=obj.fromtostate(:,state+1,obj.epoch_decode+1)'
194
                          m=obj.computemetric(r1,r2,....
195
                   obj.trellisoutput(:,:,prevstate+1,state+1,obj.epoch_decode+1));
```

| 196    | <pre>nextmetric=obj.metrics(prevstate+1)+m;</pre>                          |            |
|--------|--|------------|
| 197    |  |            |
| 198    | <pre>if (nextmetric<nextmetricbest)< pre=""></nextmetricbest)<></pre>      |            |
| 199    | nextmetricbest=nextmetric;   |            |
| 200    | <pre>prevstatebest=prevstate;</pre>  |            |
| 201    | <pre>statebest=state;</pre>  |            |
| 202    | end  |            |
| 203    | end %for prevstate   |            |
| 204    | <pre>if(nextmetricbest<beststatemetric)< pre=""></beststatemetric)<></pre> |            |
| 205    | <pre>beststatemetric=nextmetricbest;</pre>                                 |            |
| 206    | <pre>obj.beststate=state;</pre>  |            |
| 207    | end  |            |
| 208    | <pre>obj.nextmetrics(state+1)=nextmetricbest;</pre>                        |            |
| 209    | <pre>obj.prevstatearray(state+1,obj.front+1)=prev</pre>                    | statebest; |
| 210    | end %for state   |            |
| 211    | <pre>obj.metrics=obj.nextmetrics;</pre>                                    |            |
| 212    | <pre>obj.countbranches=obj.countbranches+1;</pre>                          |            |
| 213    | decodeout=0;   |            |
| 214    | bitsout=[0;0];   |            |
| 215    |  |            |
| 216    |  |            |
| 217    | if(obj.countbranches≥obj.viterbiwindowwidth)                               |            |
| 218    | % start from best state and work back                                      |            |
| 219    | <pre>state=obj.beststate;</pre>  |            |
| 220    | <pre>idx=obj.front;</pre>  |            |
| 221    | <pre>epoch1=obj.epoch_decode;</pre>  |            |
| 222    |  |            |
| 223    | <pre>for i=1:obj.viterbiwindowwidth</pre>                                  |            |
| 224    | <pre>prevstate=obj.prevstatearray(state+1,idx+1);</pre>                    | % go back  |
| 225    | <pre>idx=mod(idx-1,obj.viterbiwindowwidth);</pre>                          | % circular |
|        | indexing   |            |
| 226    | lastepoch=epoch1;  |            |
| 227    | <pre>epoch1=mod(epoch1-1,obj.Nepochs);</pre>                               |            |
| 228    |  |            |
| 229    | if(i≠obj.viterbiwindowwidth)   |            |
| 230    | <pre>state=prevstate;</pre>  |            |
| 231    | end  |            |
| 232    | end  |            |
| 233    | <pre>bitsout=obj.inputbits(:,prevstate+1,state+1,lastep</pre>              | och+1);    |
| 234    | decodeout=1;   |            |
| 235    | end  |            |
| 236    | <pre>obj.front=mod(obj.front+1,obj.viterbiwindowwidth);</pre>              |            |
| 237    | obj.epoch_decode=mod(obj.epoch_decode+1,obj.Nepoch                         | s);        |
| 238    | end  |            |
| 239    |  |            |
| 240 %- |  |            |
| 241    |  |            |
| 242    | <pre>function bitsout=viterbishapedecodeflush(obj)</pre>                   |            |
| 243    | <pre>bitsout = [];</pre>   |            |
| 244    | <pre>state = obj.beststate;</pre>  |            |
| 245    |  |            |
| 246    | <pre>epoch1 = mod(obj.epoch_decode-1,obj.Nepochs);</pre>                   |            |
| 247    | <pre>idx = mod(obj.front-1,obj.viterbiwindowwidth);</pre>                  |            |
| 248    |  |            |
| 249    | <pre>for i = 1:obj.viterbiwindowwidth-1</pre>                              |            |
|        | -  |            |

```
250
                   prevstate = obj.prevstatearray(state +1, idx +1); % go ...
                      back to previous state
251
                   lastepoch = epoch1;
                   bits1 = obj.inputbits(:,prevstate +1,state +1,lastepoch +1);
252
                   idx = mod(idx - 1,obj.viterbiwindowwidth); % circular ...
253
                       indexing
                   epoch1 = mod(epoch1 - 1, obj.Nepochs);
254
255
                  bitsout = [bits1 bitsout];
                 state = prevstate;
256
257
                end
258
        end
259
260
261
   2_
262
         function bitsqueuein(obj,bits)
263
            obj.bitqueue(:,obj.bitqueuefront+1)=bits(:);
264
            obj.bitqueuefront=mod(obj.bitqueuefront+1,obj.viterbiwindowwidth);
265
         end
266
   8----
267
         function bits=bitqueueout(obj)
268
             bits=obj.bitqueue(:,obj.bitqueueback+1);
269
             obj.bitqueueback=mod(obj.bitqueueback+1,obj.viterbiwindowwidth);
270
         end
271
272
273
274
           function symbol=Bin2DecClass(obj,k)
275
276
             symbol=0;
277
                 for ind=1:1:length(k)
                 symbol=symbol+k(ind)*2^(length(k)-ind);
278
                 end
279
280
            end
281
282
   2 ----
             function [symnosave, coderot]=encode(obj, bits)
283
                         symno=obj.Bin2DecClass(bits);
284
285
                         symnosave=symno;
286
287
288 %
                       %%%% Encoding using Dr Sodha's approach
289
                          if (obj.approach==3)
                                newpoint=obj.AddRot(symno+1,obj.sumrotcount+1);
290
291
292
                                coderot=obj.rotA(newpoint+1);
                                %coderot is code symbol signal point
293
294
295
                                %update total number of previous rotation
296
   8
                                  if (obj.sumrotcount+coderot≥obj.M)
297 %
                                    obj.sumrotcount=obj.sumrotcount+coderot-obj.M;
298 %
                                  else
299 %
                                    obj.sumrotcount=obj.sumrotcount+coderot;
300 %
                                  end
301
                            obj.sumrotcount=mod(obj.sumrotcount+coderot,obj.M);
302
                                %obj.sumrotcount is the total rotation
303
                          end
```

| 304 $%$ | %%%%% end of Dr Shodha's approach                                    |
|---------|--|
| 305     |  |
| 306     |  |
| 307     | %%%% approach 1  |
| 308     | if (obj.approach==1)   |
| 309     | <pre>symno=obj.cumrotoffset(symno+1,obj.sumrotcount+1);</pre>        |
| 310     | end  |
| 311     |  |
| 312     | %%%% approach 2  |
| 313     | if (obj.approach==2)   |
| 314     | <pre>symno=mod(symno+obj.sumrotcount,obj.Nstate);</pre>              |
| 315     | ena  |
| 316     | 8888 used in both approach 1 and 2.                                  |
| 317     | if ( $ch_i$ approach $-1$ $  $ $ch_i$ approach $-2$ )                |
| 318     | if (-obj.approach  |
| 320     | xcyclecount=obj epoch:   |
| 321     | else   |
| 322     | <pre>xcvclecount=0;</pre>  |
| 323     | end  |
| 324     |  |
| 325     | <pre>tosym=obj.xcycle(xcyclecount+1);</pre>                          |
| 326     | end  |
| 327     | %approach 1  |
| 328     | <pre>if (obj.approach==1)</pre>                                      |
| 329     | <pre>coderot=obj.fromtodist(tosym+1,symno+1);</pre>                  |
| 330     | end  |
| 331     |  |
| 332     | %approach 2  |
| 333     | <pre>11 (OD J. approachz) coderet-med(cumpettecum obj Nstate);</pre> |
| 334     | end  |
| 336     |  |
| 337     |  |
| 338     | %%%% used in both appraoch 1 and 2:                                  |
| 339     | <pre>if (obj.approach ==1    obj.approach ==2)</pre>                 |
| 340     | <pre>obj.sumrotcount=mod(obj.multipliedfactor*</pre>                 |
| 341     | (obj.sumrotcount+coderot),obj.Nstate);                               |
| 342     | <pre>coderot=mod(coderot,obj.M);</pre>                               |
| 343     | <pre>obj.epoch=mod(obj.epoch+1,obj.Nepochs);</pre>                   |
|         | % move to the next epoch   |
| 344     | end  |
| 345     | end sencode  |
| 347 %   |  |
| 348     | <pre>function testbits=CreateTestBitsClass(obi)</pre>                |
| 349     | <pre>testbits=zeros(1,obj.M*obj.Nbits);</pre>                        |
| 350     | ctrr=0;  |
| 351     | ind=1;   |
| 352     | for q=0:1:obj.M-1  |
| 353     | while(q≠0)   |
| 354     | r=rem(q,2);  |
| 355     | q=fix(q/2);  |
| 356     | <pre>testbits(ind*obj.Nbits-ctrr)=r;</pre>                           |
| 357     | <pre>ctrr=mod(ctrr+1,obj.Nbits); </pre>                              |
| 358     | ena  |

```
359
                     ctrr=0;
                     ind=ind+1;
360
361
                  end
362
            end
363
364
365
            function states=allstateClass(obj)
                 states=ones(obj.Nstate,obj.Nstate);
366
                 for ind1=1:1:obj.Nstate
367
                     for ind2=1:1:obj.Nstate
368
                         states(ind1, ind2) = ind1-1;
369
                     end
370
                 end
371
372
            end
373
374
375
     function obj=setdecoderinfo(obj,doplot)
376
      % set trellis information for decode using viterbi;
377
      % trellis is computed using each poissble from-state(initial
378
379
      % number of total rotation(sumrotcount)) and for each from-state
      % using every possible combination of bits;
380
381
      %algorithm
      if (doplot)
382
      figure(doplot)
383
      clf;
384
      set(gca, 'ydir', 'reverse');
385
      yplotsep = 1;
386
387
      xplotsep = 1;
388
      markersize = 15;
      mulist = [0.15 0.45 0.60 0.75];
389
      xcyclesym = ['A' 'B' 'C' 'D'];
390
391
      end
392
      %initialize trellis parameters
      allstate=obj.allstateClass();
393
      obj.trellisoutput=Inf(2,2,obj.Nstate,obj.Nstate,obj.Nepochs);
394
      obj.inputbits=zeros(obj.Nbits,obj.Nstate,obj.Nstate,obj.Nepochs);
395
      obj.metrics=zeros(obj.Nstate,1);
396
      obj.nextmetrics=zeros(obj.Nstate,1);
397
      obj.fromtostate=zeros(obj.Nstate,obj.Nstate,obj.Nepochs);
398
      bj.testbits=obj.CreateTestBitsClass(); %genarate bit sequence ...
399
          [example, for M=4 bit sequence= 0 0; 0 1; 1 0; 1 1]
400
      for epoch1=0:obj.Nepochs-1
       if(doplot)
401
402
       plottime = epoch1; plotx1 = plottime; plotx2 = plottime + xplotsep;
       text(0.5*(plotx1 + plotx2), -0.2, xcyclesym(epoch1 +1)); hold on;
403
404
       end
       if (obj.doconstanttarget)
405
406
       xcyclecount=0;
       else
407
       xcyclecount=epoch1;
408
       end
409
       tosym=obj.xcycle(xcyclecount+1);
410
411
       for state=0:obj.Nstate-1
412
        bitctr=0;
413
        sumrotcountsave=state;
```

randcolor=rand(1,3); while(bitctr<(obj.M\*obj.Nbits))</pre> obj.sumrotcount=sumrotcountsave; symno=obj.Bin2DecClass(obj.testbits(bitctr+1:bitctr+obj.Nbits)); symnosave=symno; %%%%% Dr Sodha's approach: if (obj.approach==3) newpoint=obj.AddRot(symno+1,obj.sumrotcount+1); coderot=obj.rotA(newpoint+1); %update total number of previous rotation sumrotcount=mod(obj.sumrotcount+coderot,obj.Nstate); 425 % if (obj.sumrotcount+coderot≥obj.M) 426 % sumrotcount=obj.sumrotcount+coderot-obj.M; %to state 2 else % sumrotcount=obj.sumrotcount+coderot; %to state 8 end end %%%% End of Dr Sodha's approach: %%% approach 2 if (obj.approach==2) symno=mod(symno+obj.sumrotcount,obj.Nstate); coderot=mod(symno+tosym,obj.Nstate); end %%%%% end of approach 2 %%%% approach 1 if (obj.approach==1) symno=obj.cumrotoffset(symno+1,obj.sumrotcount+1); coderot=obj.fromtodist(tosym+1,symno+1); end %%%%end of approach 1 %%% used in both approach 1 and 2: if (obj.approach ==1 || obj.approach ==2) sumrotcount=mod(obj.multipliedfactor\*... (obj.sumrotcount+coderot), obj.Nstate); end coderot=mod(coderot,obj.M); fromstate=state; tostate=sumrotcount; obj.trellisoutput(:,1,fromstate+1,tostate+1,epoch1+1)=... obj.const\_pts(:,symnosave+1); obj.trellisoutput(:,2,fromstate+1,tostate+1,epoch1+1)=... obj.const\_pts(:,coderot+1); obj.inputbits(:,fromstate+1,tostate+1,epoch1+1)=... obj.testbits(bitctr+1:bitctr+obj.Nbits)'; if (doplot) fromy = sumrotcountsave\*yplotsep; toy = sumrotcount\*yplotsep; plot([plotx1 plotx2], [fromy, toy], 'color', randcolor); plot(plotx1, fromy, '.', ... 'markersize',markersize,'color','k'); plot(plotx2, fromy, '.', 'markersize', markersize, 'color', 'k');

```
%str = sprintf('%d%d/%d%d',obj.testbits(bitctr+1),...
```

```
466
           obj.testbits(bitctr+2), symnosave, coderot);
467
                if (obj.Nstate==4)
468
                 str = sprintf('%d/%d', symnosave, coderot);
```

mu = mulist(state +1);

414

415416

417

418

419420

421

422423

424

427

428429

430

431

432433

434

435

436

437

438

439

440

441 442

443

444 445

446

447

448

449

450

451

452453

454455

456

457

458459

460

461462

463

464

465

```
470
                textx = (1-mu) *plotx1 + mu*plotx2;
471
                texty = (1-mu) * fromy + mu*toy;
472
                htext = text(textx,texty,str);
                tangle = -(180/pi)*atan((toy - fromy)/(plotx2 - plotx1));
473
                % - sign since y coords reversed
474
                set(htext, 'VerticalAlignment', 'bottom');
475
                set(htext, 'rotation', tangle);
476
477
               end
               %hAxes = gca;
                                 %Axis handle
478
               %Changing 'LineStyle' to 'none'
479
               yticks([0:1:obj.Nstate-1])
480
               xticks([0 1])
481
               xlim([0 1])
482
               hold on
483
484
               plot([0 0],[0 obj.Nstate-1],'w')
485
               %ax1 = gca;
               %yruler = ax1.YRuler;
486
               %yruler.Axle.Visible = 'off';
487
               %xruler = ax1.XRuler;
488
               %xruler.Axle.Visible = 'off';
489
490
              end % if doplots
             bitctr=bitctr+obj.Nbits;
491
           end %while
492
          end% for state
493
          obj.fromtostate(:,:,epoch1+1)=allstate;
494
          end % for epoch1
495
          obj.prevstatearray=zeros(obj.Nstate,obj.viterbiwindowwidth);
496
497
          obj.epoch_decode=0;
498
          obj.bitqueue=zeros(obj.Nbits,obj.viterbiwindowwidth);
499
          obj.bitqueuefront=0;
         obj.bitqueueback=0;
500
501
       end %setdecoderinfo
502 %--
503
   end
504 end
```

## B.2 Julia Code

Julia Code for Signal Point Target Code

```
1 tic()
2 using SpecialFunctions
3 using PyPlot
4 using ToeplitzMatrices
5 using LaTeXStrings
6
7 function qf(x)
8 return .5*erfc(x/sqrt(2))
9 end
10
```

```
11 function mquamdemod(r,const_ptsf,const_axis)
    indxx=const_axis[indmin(abs.(r[1]-const_axis))]
12
13
    indyy=const_axis[indmin(abs.(r[2]-const_axis))]
   d=[indxx,indyy]
14
    lia=Int[ d == const_ptsf[:,i] for i=1:size(const_ptsf,2) ]
15
   symbol=(findin(lia,1))[1]
16
      return symbol-1
17
18
     end
19
20 function bin2dec(k)
    symbol=0
21
    for i=1:1:length(k)
22
      symbol=symbol+k[i]*2^(length(k)-i)
23
24
     end
25
    return symbol
26 end
27
28 function randombits(k)
   return bits=Int.(bitrand(k))
29
30 end #randombit
31 function createtestbits (M, Nbits)
32 testbits=zeros(Int64,1,M*Nbits)
33 ctrr=0
34 i=1
   for q in collect(0:1:M-1)
35
      while (q!=0)
36
       q,r=divrem(q,2)
37
       testbits[i*Nbits-ctrr]=r
38
39
       ctrr=mod(ctrr+1,Nbits)
     end #while
40
       ctrr=0
41
       i=i+1
42
   end #for
43
    return testbits
44
45 end #createtestbits
46
47 doconstanttarget=false
48 doplot=false
49 M=64
50 Viterbiwindowwidth=10
51 doMquam=false
52 doshapecode=true
53 SNRrange=0:10
54 SNRrangetheo=0:15
55 GraphPsrange=10.0<sup>-5</sup>
56 Nstate=M
57 Nepochs=M
58 Nbits=Int64(log2(M))
59 allstates=ones(Int64, Nstate, Nstate)
60 for i=1:1:Nstate
61
   for j=1:1:Nstate
62 allstates[i,j]=i-1
63 end
64 end
65 testbits=createtestbits(M,Nbits)
66 const_axis=collect(-(2^(Nbits/2)-1):2:(2^(Nbits/2)-1))
```

```
67
68 const_pts=Int.([kron(Int.(ones(2^(Nbits/2))),const_axis) ...
       kron(const_axis, Int.(ones(2^(Nbits/2))))]')
69
70 println("-----
                        _____
71 if (doshapecode)
     #SNRrangeShapecode=0:10
72
     if ¬(doconstanttarget)
73
       xcycle=collect(0:1:(M-1))
74
75
     else
       xcycle=0
76
77
     end
78
79 #const_pts
80
81
     cumrotoffset=Int64.(Hankel(float.(collect(0:1:M-1)),float.([M-1; ...
         collect(0:1:M-2)])))
     fromtodist=Int64.(Hankel(float.(collect(0:1:M-1)),float.([M-1; ...
82
         collect(0:1:M-2)])))
     xcyclesym=['A' 'B' 'C' 'D' 'E' 'F' 'G' 'H' 'I' 'J' 'K' 'L' 'M' 'N' 'O' 'P']
83
     trellisoutput=zeros(Int64,2,2,Nstate,Nstate,Nepochs)
84
     inputbits=zeros(Int64,Nbits,Nstate,Nstate,Nepochs)
85
     metrics=zeros(Nstate,1)
86
     nextmetrics=zeros(Nstate,1)
87
     prevstatearray=zeros(Int64,Nstate,Viterbiwindowwidth)
88
     fromtostate=zeros(Int64,Nstate,Nstate,Nepochs)
89
     bitqueue=zeros(Int64,Nbits,Viterbiwindowwidth)
90
     bitqueuefront=0
91
92
     bitqueueback=0
93
94 #-----
95
   mutable struct ShapeCodeFun
     M::Int64
96
97
     Viterbiwindowwidth::Int64
    Nstate::Int64
98
     Nepochs::Int64
99
100
    Nbits::Int64
101
    fromtodist
    cumrotoffset
102
103
    const_pts
104
     xcycle
105
     sumrotcount
106
     epoch
107
     doconstanttarget::Bool
108
     trellisoutput
     inputbits
109
110
   fromtostate
111 metrics
112 nextmetrics
113
     epoch_decode
114
     prevstatearray
115
     front.
116
     countbranches
117
    beststate
118
     bitqueue
119
     bitqueuefront
```

```
120
     bitqueueback
121
      end
122
    # - - - -
                             _____
123
     function setdecoderinfo(self::ShapeCodeFun,doplot,allstates,testbitsM)
124
125
     if (doplot)
       xcyclesym=['A' 'B' 'C' 'D' ];
126
127
       yplotsep=1
       xplotsep=1
128
129
       markersize=15
       mulist=[0.15; 0.45; 0.60; 0.75]
130
131
       fig,ax=subplots()
       ax[:axis]("off")
132
133
       ax[:invert_yaxis]()
134
     end
135
     testbits=testbitsM
136
     for epoch1=0:self.Nepochs-1
137
138
       if (doplot)
          plottime=epoch1
139
140
          plotx1=plottime
141
          plotx2=plottime+xplotsep
142
143
          ax[:text](plotx2,-.3,"$(xcyclesym[epoch1+1])")
144
145
        end
        if (self.doconstanttarget)
146
147
          xcyclecount=0
148
        else
149
          xcyclecount=epoch1
150
        end
151
        tosym=self.xcycle[xcyclecount+1]
152
153
154
        for state=0:self.M-1
         bitctr=0
155
156
          sumrotcountsave=state
          while (bitctr<(self.M*self.Nbits))</pre>
157
158
            self.sumrotcount=sumrotcountsave
            symno=bin2dec(testbits[bitctr+1:bitctr+self.Nbits])
159
160
            #println(symno) function [symnosave,coderot]=encode(obj,bits)
161
            symnosave=symno
162
            symno=mod(symno+self.sumrotcount,self.M)
163
            coderot=mod(symno+tosym, self.M)
164
            sumrotcount=mod(self.sumrotcount+coderot,self.M)
            fromstate=state
165
166
            tostate=sumrotcount
167
            self.trellisoutput[:,1,fromstate+1,tostate+1,epoch1+1]=...
168
                self.const_pts[:,symnosave+1]
169
            self.trellisoutput[:,2,fromstate+1,tostate+1,epoch1+1]=...
170
                self.const_pts[:,coderot+1]
171
            self.inputbits[:,fromstate+1,tostate+1,epoch1+1]=...
                testbits[bitctr+1:bitctr+self.Nbits]
172
173
            if (doplot)
174
                         fromy=sumrotcountsave*yplotsep
175
                         toy=sumrotcount*xplotsep
```

```
176
177
                       ax[:plot]([plotx1; plotx2],[fromy; toy],"k")
178
                       ax[:scatter](plotx1, fromy, c=:black)
179
                       ax[:scatter](plotx2, fromy, c=:black)
180
181
                       mu=mulist[state+1]
182
183
                       textx=(1-mu) *plotx1+mu*plotx2
                       texty=(1-mu) *fromy+mu*toy
184
                       tangle=(-180/pi)*atan((toy - fromy)/(plotx2 - plotx1))
185
                       ax[:text](textx,texty,"$(testbits[bitctr+1])...
186
               $(testbits[bitctr+2])/$(symnosave)$(coderot)",...
187
               rotation=tangle, horizontalalignment="left",...
188
               verticalalignment="bottom", rotation_mode="anchor")
189
           end #doplot
190
191
           #println(bitctr)
192
           bitctr=bitctr+self.Nbits
         end #while
193
194
       end #end state
       self.fromtostate[:,:,epoch1+1]=allstates
195
196
     end #end epoch1
     end #end setdecoderinfo
197
                                       _____
198 #-----
199
     function resetshapecoder(self::ShapeCodeFun)
200
     self.epoch=0
201
202
     self.sumrotcount=0
     end #end resetshapecoder
203
204 #-----
                              _____
205
     function resetshapedecoder(self::ShapeCodeFun)
     self.epoch_decode=0
206
     self.front=0
207
     self.countbranches=0
208
     self.bitqueuefront=0
209
     self.bitqueueback=0
210
     end #end resetshapedecoder
211
212 #-----
                                           _____
213
214
     function encode(self::ShapeCodeFun,bits)
215
     symno=bin2dec(bits)
216
     symnosave=symno
217
     symno=mod(symno+self.sumrotcount,self.M)
218
     if (¬self.doconstanttarget)
219
       xcyclecount=self.epoch
220
     else
       xcyclecount=0
221
222
     end
223
     tosym=self.xcycle[xcyclecount+1]
224
     coderot=mod(symno+tosym, self.M)
225
     self.sumrotcount=mod(self.sumrotcount+coderot,self.M)
226
     self.epoch=mod(self.epoch+1,self.Nepochs)
227
     return symnosave, coderot
     end #end encode
228
229
230
     function computemetric(r1, r2, output)
231
     out11=output[1,1]
```

```
out12=output[1,2]
232
233
      out21=output[2,1]
234
      out22=output[2,2]
235
      n1=(r1[1]-out11)^2+(r1[2]-out21)^2
      n2=(r2[1]-out12)^2+(r2[2]-out22)^2
236
237
      m=n1+n2
238
      return m
239
      end #end computemetric
240
241
      function viterbishapedecode(self::ShapeCodeFun,r1,r2)
      beststatemetric=Inf
242
     for state=0:self.Nstate-1
243
       nextmetricbest=Inf
244
        for prevstate=self.fromtostate[:,state+1,self.epoch_decode+1]'
245
          m=computemetric(r1,r2,...
246
247
           self.trellisoutput[:,:,prevstate+1,state+1,self.epoch_decode+1])
248
          nextmetric=self.metrics[prevstate+1]+m
          if (nextmetric<nextmetricbest)</pre>
249
250
            nextmetricbest=nextmetric
251
            global prevstatebest=prevstate
252
            statebest=state
          end
253
        end #for prevstate
254
        if (nextmetricbest < beststatemetric)</pre>
255
           beststatemetric = nextmetricbest
256
           self.beststate = state
257
        end
258
        self.nextmetrics[state+1]=nextmetricbest
259
260
        self.prevstatearray[state+1, self.front+1]=prevstatebest
261
      end #for state
      self.metrics=copy(self.nextmetrics)
262
      self.countbranches=self.countbranches+1
263
      decodeout=0
264
265
      bitsout=[0;0]
     if (self.countbranches>self.Viterbiwindowwidth)
266
       state=self.beststate
267
       idx=self.front
268
        epoch1=self.epoch_decode
269
270
        prevstate=[]
        lastepoch=[]
271
272
        for i=1:self.Viterbiwindowwidth
273
          prevstate=self.prevstatearray[state+1,idx+1]
          idx=mod(idx-1,self.Viterbiwindowwidth)
274
275
          lastepoch=epoch1
          epoch1=mod(epoch1-1, self.Nepochs)
276
          if (i!=self.Viterbiwindowwidth)
277
278
            state=prevstate
279
          end
280
        end # i
          bitsout=self.inputbits[:,prevstate+1,state+1,lastepoch+1]
281
282
          decodeout=1
      end #if
283
      self.front=mod(self.front+1, self.Viterbiwindowwidth)
284
285
      self.epoch_decode=mod(self.epoch_decode+1, self.Nepochs)
286
      return decodeout, bitsout
287
      end #shape decoder viterbi
```

```
288
289
290
291
     function viterbishapecodeflush(self::ShapeCodeFun)
     bitsout=zeros(Int64,self.Nbits,self.Viterbiwindowwidth-1)
292
     state=self.beststate
293
     epoch1=mod(self.epoch_decode-1,self.Nepochs)
294
     idx=mod(self.front-1,self.Viterbiwindowwidth)
295
     for i=1:self.Viterbiwindowwidth-1
296
297
       prevstate=self.prevstatearray[state+1,idx+1]
298
       lastepoch=epoch1
       bits1=self.inputbits[:,prevstate+1,state+1,lastepoch+1]
299
       idx=mod(idx-1,self.Viterbiwindowwidth)
300
       epoch1=mod(epoch1-1,self.Nepochs)
301
302
       bitsout[:,self.Viterbiwindowwidth-1-i]=bits1
303
       state=prevstate
304
     end #for
305
     end #viterbishapecodeflush
306
                                    _____
307
308
     function bitqueuein(self::ShapeCodeFun, bits)
     self.bitqueue[:,self.bitqueuefront+1]=bits
309
310
     self.bitqueuefront = mod(self.bitqueuefront + 1, self.Viterbiwindowwidth)
311
     end
312
313
     function bitqueueout(self::ShapeCodeFun)
     bits=self.bitqueue[:,self.bitqueueback+1]
314
     self.bitqueueback = mod(self.bitqueueback + 1, self.Viterbiwindowwidth)
315
316
     return bits
317
     end
318
319
   #create object of ...
       320
321
     a=ShapeCodeFun(M, Viterbiwindowwidth, Nstate, Nepochs, Nbits,
322
                    fromtodist,cumrotoffset,const_pts,xcycle,0,
323
                    0, doconstanttarget, trellisoutput, inputbits, fromtostate,
324
325
           metrics, nextmetrics, 0, prevstatearray, 0, 0, 0, bitqueue, 0, 0)
326
327
328
     setdecoderinfo(a,doplot,allstates,testbits)
329
     resetshapecoder(a)
     resetshapedecoder(a)
330
331
332 end #doshapecode
333
334 nerrortocount=100
335
336 Eb=1
337 R=1
338 Es=Nbits*Eb*R
339 Esscale=sqrt(3*Es/(2*(M-1)))
340 Rcoded=.5
341 Escoded=sqrt(Nbits*Eb*Rcoded*3/(2*(M-1)))
342 theorprobQPSK=[]
```

```
343 theorprobBPSK=[]
344 theoprobMquam=[]
345
   for SNR in SNRrangetheo
346
      println("snr=$(SNR)")
      N0=Eb*10^ (-SNR/10)
347
      EbN0=Eb/N0
348
      push!(theorprobQPSK,(1 - (1-qf(sqrt(2*EbN0)))^2))
349
      push!(theorprobBPSK, (qf(sqrt(2*EbN0))))
350
      push!(theoprobMquam,...
351
        (1-(1-2*(1-sqrt(1/M))*qf(sqrt((3/(M-1))*Nbits*EbN0)))^2))
352
353 end
354
355 r=[0.0 0.0]
   if (doMquam)
356
      snrctr=0
357
358
      errctr=[]
359
      nsyms=[]
      for SNR in SNRrange
360
361
        println("snr=$(SNR)")
362
        snrctr=snrctr+1
363
        N0=Eb*10^ (-SNR/10)
        EbN0=Eb/N0
364
        #println("N0=$(N0) EbN0=$(EbN0)")
365
        sigma2=N0/2
366
        sigma=sqrt(sigma2)
367
        push!(errctr,0)
368
        push!(nsyms,0)
369
370
371
        while(errctr[snrctr]<nerrortocount)</pre>
372
          nsyms[snrctr]=nsyms[snrctr]+1
          bits=randombits(Nbits)
373
          symno=bin2dec(bits)
374
          constpts=Esscale*const_pts[:, symno+1]
375
376
          noise=sigma*randn(1,2)
377
          r[1]=constpts[1]+noise[1]
          r[2]=constpts[2]+noise[2]
378
          decodesymno=mquamdemod(r/Esscale, const_pts, const_axis)
379
          #println("decodesymno=$(decodesymno) symno=$(symno)")
380
381
          if (decodesymno != symno)
382
            errctr[snrctr]=errctr[snrctr]+1
383
384
            println("SNR=$(SNR):uncoded error no=$(errctr[snrctr])")
385
             #println("decodesymno=$(decodesymno) symno=$(symno)")
          end
386
         if (errctr[snrctr]!=0 && errctr[snrctr]/nsyms[snrctr] <GraphPsrange)
387
            break
388
389
          end
                #end break while
        end #while errctr
390
391
        if (errctr[snrctr]/nsyms[snrctr] < GraphPsrange)</pre>
          break
392
        end #end brek for
393
      end #for snr
394
395 end #if(doqpsk)
396
397
    if (doshapecode)
398
        errctr_coded=[]
```

```
399
        errctr_bits_coded=[]
        nsyms_coded=[]
400
401
        snrctr=0
        for SNR in SNRrange
402
          println("SNRShapeCode=$(SNR)")
403
404
          snrctr=snrctr+1
          N0=Eb*10^ (-SNR/10)
405
          EbN0=Eb/N0
406
          sigma2=N0/2
407
408
          sigma=sqrt(sigma2)
          push!(errctr_coded, 0)
409
          push!(errctr_bits_coded,0)
410
          push!(nsyms_coded,0)
411
          while(errctr_coded[snrctr]<nerrortocount)</pre>
412
413
            nsyms_coded[snrctr]=nsyms_coded[snrctr]+1
414
            bits1=randombits(Nbits)
415
            sym1, sym2=encode(a, bits1)
            bitqueuein(a, bits1)
416
417
            s1=Escoded*a.const_pts[:,sym1+1]
418
            s2=Escoded*a.const_pts[:,sym2+1]
419
            noise1=sigma*randn(2,1)
            noise2=sigma*randn(2,1)
420
421
            r1=s1+noise1
            r2=s2+noise2
422
            decodeout, bitsout=viterbishapedecode(a,r1/Escoded,r2/Escoded)
423
            if (decodeout==1)
424
425
               inbits=bitqueueout(a)
               if (inbits!=bitsout)
426
427
                 println("SNR=$(SNR):coded error no=$(errctr_coded[snrctr])")
428
               end
              println("inbits=$(inbits) bitsout=$(bitsout)")
429
               errctr_coded[snrctr]=errctr_coded[snrctr]....
430
            +Int64(any(inbits!=bitsout))
431
432
               errctr_bits_coded[snrctr] = errctr_bits_coded[snrctr] + ...
                   sum(Int64.(inbits .!= bitsout))
            end #decodeout
433
            if (errctr_coded[snrctr]!=0 && ...
434
                errctr_coded[snrctr]/nsyms_coded[snrctr] < GraphPsrange)</pre>
              break
435
            end
                   #end break while
436
437
        end #while error count
438
        if (errctr_coded[snrctr]/nsyms_coded[snrctr] < GraphPsrange)</pre>
439
          break
        end #end break for
440
441
      end #for SNRrangeShapecode
442
443 end #doshapecode
444 legendstr=[]
445 push! (legendstr, "QPSK(th)")
446 push! (legendstr, "BPSK(th)")
447 push!(legendstr,"$(M)QUAM(th)")
448
449 if (doMquam)
450
      push!(legendstr, "$(M)Quam(ex)")
451 end
452 if (doshapecode)
```

```
453
     push!(legendstr, "Shapecoded$(M)Quam(sym)")
     push!(legendstr, "Shapecoded$(M)Quam(bit)")
454
455 <mark>end</mark>
456 len=length(SNRrange)
457
458 fig1, ax1=subplots()
459 ax1[:semilogy](collect(0:1:length(theorprobQPSK)-1),theorprobQPSK,"g:")
460 ax1[:semilogy](collect(0:1:length(theorprobBPSK)-1),theorprobBPSK,"b:")
461 ax1[:semilogy](collect(0:1:length(theoprobMquam)-1),theoprobMquam,"k:")
462
463 if (doMquam)
     ax1[:semilogy](collect(0:1:length(errctr)-1),errctr./(nsyms),"r:")
464
465 end
466
467 if (doshapecode)
468
     ax1[:semilogy] (collect(0:1:length(errctr_coded)-1),...
469
        errctr_coded./nsyms_coded,"c")
     ax1[:semilogy] (collect(0:1:length(errctr_coded)-1),...
470
471
        errctr_bits_coded./(Nbits*nsyms_coded),"c:")
472 end
473
474 ax1[:legend](legendstr)
475 ax1[:set_ylim]([GraphPsrange,10.0^-0])
476 ax1[:grid](color="k", linestyle="--")
477 xlabel(L"(SNR)_{db}")
478 ylabel(L"P_s" )
479 toc()
480 Ps=-1*Int(log10(GraphPsrange))
481 savefig("BER$(M)QUAMSCEbSNR$(SNRrange[end])Ps$(Ps)rate12.pdf",dpi=1500)
```

Code for Rate 2/3 (SIE)

```
1
     trellisoutput=zeros(Int64,2,3,M,Nstate,Nstate,Nepochs)
     inputbits=zeros(Int64, Nbits, 2, M, Nstate, Nstate, Nepochs)
2
3
     metrics=zeros(Nstate,1)
     nextmetrics=zeros(Nstate,1)
4
     prevstatearray=zeros(Int64,Nstate,Viterbiwindowwidth)
\mathbf{5}
6
     fromtostate=zeros(Int64, Nstate, Nstate, Nepochs)
     bitqueue=zeros(Int64, Nbits, 2, Viterbiwindowwidth)
\overline{7}
     bitqueuefront=0
8
9
     bitqueueback=0
10
     bestsymbolarray=zeros(Int64,Nstate,Viterbiwindowwidth)
11
12
13
14
     function setdecoderinfo(self::ShapeCodeFun,doplot,allstates,testbitsM)
15
16
     if (doplot)
       xcyclesym=['A' 'B' 'C' 'D' 'E' 'F' 'G' 'H' 'I' 'J' 'K' 'L' 'M' 'N' ...
17
           '0' 'P']
       yplotsep=1
18
19
       xplotsep=1
```

```
markersize=15
20
       mulist=[.062 .12 .18 .25 .31 .37 .43 .5 .562 .6245 .687 .75 .81 .87 ...
21
            .93 .98]
       fig,ax=subplots()
22
       ax[:axis]("off")
23
24
       ax[:invert_yaxis]()
25
     end
26
     testbits=testbitsM
27
     for epoch1=0:self.Nepochs-1
28
       if (doplot)
29
         plottime=epoch1
30
         plotx1=plottime
31
         plotx2=plottime+xplotsep
32
33
34
         ax[:text] (plotx2,-.3, "$(xcyclesym[epoch1+1])")
35
36
       end
       if (self.doconstanttarget)
37
         xcyclecount=0
38
39
       else
         xcyclecount=epoch1
40
41
       end
42
       tosym=self.xcycle[xcyclecount+1]
43
44
       for state=0:self.M-1
45
         bitctr=0
46
47
         sumrotcountsave=state
         while (bitctr<(self.M*self.Nbits))</pre>
48
           bitssymbol1=testbits[bitctr+1:bitctr+self.Nbits]
49
            symno=bin2dec(bitssymbol1)
50
            symnosave=symno
51
52
            self.sumrotcount=sumrotcountsave
           bitctr1=0
53
            while(bitctr1<(self.M*self.Nbits))</pre>
54
              bitssymbol2=testbits[bitctr1+1:bitctr1+self.Nbits]
55
56
              symno2=bin2dec(bitssymbol2)
                                                #conver secend symbol to decimel
57
58
              symnosave2=symno2
                                                                             #save ...
59
                  to a memory
60
              state_int1=mod(symno+self.sumrotcount,self.M) ...
61
                                      #intermediate state after taking ...
                  previosu number of rotation into account
62
              #coderot1=mod(state_int1+tosym,self.M)
              #state_final1=mod(self.sumrotcount+state_int1,self.M)
63
64
              #tosym=self.xcycle[xcyclecount+1]
65
              state_int2=mod(state_int1+symno2, self.M)
66
              #coderot2=mod(state_int2+tosym,self.M)
67
              #state_final2=mod(state_final1+state_int2,self.M)
68
69
70
71
```

```
#tosym=self.xcycle[xcyclecount+1]
72
              coderot=mod(state_int2+tosym, self.M)
73
74
              #state_int3=mod(state_final2+coderot,self.M)
75
              #state_interfinal=mod(state_int3+tosym,self.M)
76
              sumrotcount=mod(self.sumrotcount+coderot,self.M)
77
78
79
              fromstate=state
80
              tostate=sumrotcount
81
              #println("symn1=$(symnosave) sym2=$(symnosave2) ...
82
                  fromstate=$(fromstate) tostate=$(sumrotcount) ...
                  epoch=$(epoch1) ")
              self.trellisoutput[:,1,symnosave+1,fromstate+1,tostate+1, ...
83
                  epoch1+1]=self.const_pts[:,symnosave+1]
84
              self.trellisoutput[:,2,symnosave+1,fromstate+1,tostate+1, ...
85
                  epoch1+1]=self.const_pts[:,symnosave2+1]
              self.trellisoutput[:,3,symnosave+1,fromstate+1,tostate+1, ...
86
                  epoch1+1]=self.const_pts[:,coderot+1]
87
              #println(bitssymbol1)
88
              self.inputbits[:,1,symnosave+1,fromstate+1,tostate+1,epochl+1] ...
89
                  =bitssymbol1
              self.inputbits[:,2,symnosave+1,fromstate+1,tostate+1,epochl+1 ...
90
                 ]=bitssymbol2
              if (doplot)
91
                          fromy=sumrotcountsave*yplotsep
92
93
                          toy=sumrotcount*xplotsep
94
                          ax[:plot]([plotx1; plotx2],[fromy; toy],"k")
95
96
                          ax[:scatter](plotx1, fromy, c=:black)
                          ax[:scatter](plotx2, fromy, c=:black)
97
98
                          mu=mulist[state+1]
99
                          textx=(1-mu) *plotx1+mu*plotx2
100
                          texty=(641-mu) *fromy+mu*toy
101
                          tangle=(-180/pi)*atan((toy - fromy)/(plotx2 - plotx1))
102
                        ax[:text](textx,texty,"$(testbits[bitctr+1]) ...
103
                            $(testbits[bitctr+2])$(testbits[bitctr+3]) ...
                            $(testbits[bitctr+4])/$ (symnosave)$(coderot)", ...
                            rotation=tangle, horizontalalignment="left", ...
                            verticalalignment="bottom", rotation_mode="anchor")
                end #doplot
104
                      #println(bitctr)
105
                bitctr1=bitctr1+self.Nbits
106
107
              end #while bitctr1
             bitctr=bitctr+self.Nbits
108
109
          end #while
110
       end #end state
       self.fromtostate[:,:,epoch1+1]=allstates
111
     end #end epoch1
112
     end #end setdecoderinfo
113
114 #----
         _____
115
116
      function encode(self::ShapeCodeFun,bits1,bits2)
```

```
117
      symnol=bin2dec(bits1)
      symnosave1=symno1
118
119
      symno2=bin2dec(bits2)
120
      symnosave2=symno2
      if (¬self.doconstanttarget)
121
122
        xcyclecount=self.epoch
123
      else
124
        xcyclecount=0
125
      end
126
127
      tosym=self.xcycle[xcyclecount+1]
128
129
      state_int1=mod(symno1+self.sumrotcount,self.M)
130
131
      #coderot1=mod(state_int1+tosym, self.M)
132
      #state_final1=mod(state_int1+self.sumrotcount,self.M)
133
      state_int2=mod(symno2+state_int1, self.M)
134
      #coderot2=mod(state_int2+tosym,self.M)
135
      #state_final2=mod(state_int2+state_final1, self.M)
136
137
      coderot=mod(state_int2+tosym, self.M)
138
139
      #state_int3=mod(state_final2+coderot,self.M)
      #state_interfinal=mod(state_int3+tosym, self.M)
140
      self.sumrotcount=mod(coderot+self.sumrotcount,self.M)
141
142
      self.epoch=mod(self.epoch+1,self.Nepochs)
143
144
      return symnosave1, symnosave2, coderot
145
      end #end encode
146
      function computemetric(r1, r2, r3, output)
147
      out11=output[1,1]
148
      out12=output[1,2]
149
150
      out13=output[1,3]
      out21=output[2,1]
151
      out22=output[2,2]
152
      out23=output[2,3]
153
      n1=(r1[1]-out11)^2+(r1[2]-out21)^2
154
      n2=(r2[1]-out12)^2+(r2[2]-out22)^2
155
      n3=(r3[1]-out13)^2+(r3[2]-out23)^2
156
157
      m=n1+n2+n3
158
      return m
159
      end #end computemetric
160
      function viterbishapedecode(self::ShapeCodeFun,r1,r2,r3)
161
      beststatemetric=Inf
162
      for state=0:self.Nstate-1
163
164
        nextmetricbest=Inf
165
        for prevstate=self.fromtostate[:,state+1,self.epoch_decode+1]'
          for symbol=0:self.Nstate-1
166
            m=computemetric(r1,r2,r3,self.trellisoutput ...
167
                 [:,:,symbol+1,prevstate+1,state+1,self.epoch_decode+1])
            nextmetric=self.metrics[prevstate+1]+m
168
169
            if (nextmetric<nextmetricbest)</pre>
170
              nextmetricbest=nextmetric
171
              global prevstatebest=prevstate
```

```
172
              global symbolbest=symbol
173
              statebest=state
174
            end
          end #symbol
175
        end #for prevstate
176
177
        if (nextmetricbest < beststatemetric)</pre>
178
           beststatemetric = nextmetricbest
179
           self.beststate = state
        end
180
181
        self.nextmetrics[state+1]=nextmetricbest
        self.prevstatearray[state+1, self.front+1]=prevstatebest
182
        self.bestsymbolarray[state+1,self.front+1]=symbolbest
183
     end #for state
184
      self.metrics=copy(self.nextmetrics)
185
      self.countbranches=self.countbranches+1
186
187
      decodeout=0
188
     bitsout1=[0;0]
     bitsout2=[0;0]
189
     if (self.countbranches>self.Viterbiwindowwidth)
190
191
        state=self.beststate
192
        idx=self.front
        epoch1=self.epoch_decode
193
194
       prevstate=[]
       lastepoch=[]
195
        prevstatbestsymbol=[]
196
        for i=1:self.Viterbiwindowwidth
197
198
          prevstate=self.prevstatearray[state+1,idx+1]
199
200
          prevstatbestsymbol=self.bestsymbolarray[state+1,idx+1]
201
          idx=mod(idx-1, self.Viterbiwindowwidth)
202
          lastepoch=epoch1
          epoch1=mod(epoch1-1,self.Nepochs)
203
          if (i!=self.Viterbiwindowwidth)
204
205
            state=prevstate
          end
206
        end # i
207
          bitsout1=self.inputbits[:,1,prevstatbestsymbol+1, ...
208
              prevstate+1, state+1, lastepoch+1]
          bitsout2=self.inputbits[:,2,prevstatbestsymbol+1, ...
209
              prevstate+1, state+1, lastepoch+1]
210
          decodeout=1
211
      end #if
212
      self.front=mod(self.front+1,self.Viterbiwindowwidth)
      self.epoch_decode=mod(self.epoch_decode+1, self.Nepochs)
213
      return decodeout, bitsout1, bitsout2
214
      end #shape decoder viterbi
215
216
   # _____
217
```

Code for Rate 3/4 (SIE)

```
trellisoutput=zeros(Int64,2,n,M,M,Nstate,Nstate,Nepochs)
\mathbf{2}
     inputbits=zeros(Int64,Nbits,k,M,M,Nstate,Nstate,Nepochs)
3
4
     metrics=zeros(Nstate,1)
5
     nextmetrics=zeros(Nstate,1)
     prevstatearray=zeros(Int64,Nstate,Viterbiwindowwidth)
6
     fromtostate=zeros(Int64,Nstate,Nstate,Nepochs)
7
     bitqueue=zeros(Int64,Nbits,k,Viterbiwindowwidth)
8
9
     bitqueuefront=0
10
     bitqueueback=0
11
     bestsymbollarray=zeros(Int64,Nstate,Viterbiwindowwidth)
12
     bestsymbol2array=zeros(Int64,Nstate,Viterbiwindowwidth)
13
14
15
16
17
     function setdecoderinfo(self::ShapeCodeFun,doplot,allstates,testbitsM)
     if (doplot)
18
19
20
     end
     testbits=testbitsM
21
22
     for epoch1=0:self.Nepochs-1
23
       if (doplot)
24
25
       end
26
       if (self.doconstanttarget)
27
         xcyclecount=0
28
       else
29
30
         xcyclecount=epoch1
31
       end
32
       tosym=self.xcycle[xcyclecount+1]
33
34
       for state=0:self.Nstate-1
35
         bitctr=0
36
         sumrotcountsave=state
37
         while (bitctr<(self.M*self.Nbits))</pre>
38
           bitssymbol1=testbits[bitctr+1:bitctr+self.Nbits]
39
           symno=bin2dec(bitssymbol1)
40
           symnosave=symno
41
42
           self.sumrotcount=sumrotcountsave
43
           bitctr1=0
44
           while (bitctrl<(self.M*self.Nbits))</pre>
             bitssymbol2=testbits[bitctr1+1:bitctr1+self.Nbits]
45
46
              symno2=bin2dec(bitssymbol2)
                                                #conver secend symbol to decimel
\overline{47}
48
              symnosave2=symno2
                                                                             #save ...
49
                  to a memory
50
51
             bitctr2=0
52
             while (bitctr2<(self.M*self.Nbits))</pre>
53
54
                bitssymbol3=testbits[bitctr2+1:bitctr2+self.Nbits]
55
                symno3=bin2dec(bitssymbol3)
56
                symnosave3=symno3
```

| 57        | <pre>#println(symno3)</pre>   |
|-----------|---|
| 58        | An-mod (aumnot colf cummet count colf M)                                  |
| 59        | An=mod(symno+self.sumrotcount,self.M)                                     |
|           | #intermediate state after taking previosu number of                       |
|           | rotation into account   |
| 60        | An1=mod(An+symno2,self.M)   |
| 61        | An2=mod(An1+symno3,self.M)  |
| 62        | coderot=(An2+tosym)   |
| 63        | <pre>sumrotcount=mod(self.sumrotcount+coderot,self.Nstate)</pre>          |
| 64        |   |
| 65        |   |
| 66        | fromstate=state   |
| 67        | tostate=sumrotcount   |
| 68        | <pre>#println("symn1=\$(symnosave) sym2=\$(symnosave2)</pre>              |
|           | sym3=\$(symnosave3) parity=\$(coderot)                                    |
|           | fromstate=\$(fromstate) tostate=\$(sumrot count)                          |
|           | enoch=\$(enoch1) ")   |
| <u>co</u> |   |
| 69        |   |
| 70        | self.trellisoutput[:,1,symnosave+1,symnosave2+1,fromstate+1,.             |
|           | <pre>tostate+1,epochi+1]=self.const_pts[:,symnosave+1]</pre>              |
| 71        | <pre>self.trellisoutput[:,2,symnosave+1,symnosave2+1,fromstate+1, .</pre> |
|           | <pre>tostate+1,epoch1+1]=self.const_pts[:,symnosave2+1]</pre>             |
| 72        | <pre>self.trellisoutput[:,3,symnosave+1,symnosave2+1,fromstate+1, .</pre> |
|           | <pre>tostate+1,epoch1+1]=self.const_pts[:,symnosave3+1]</pre>             |
| 73        | <pre>self.trellisoutput[:,4,symnosave+1,symnosave2+1,fromstate+1, .</pre> |
|           | <pre>tostate+1,epoch1+1]=self.const_pts[:,coderot+1]</pre>                |
| 74        |   |
| 75        | #println(bitssymbol1)   |
| 76        | self.inputbits[:,1,svmnosave+1,symnosave2+1,fromstate+1,                  |
| 10        | tostate+1.epoch1+11=bitssymbol1   |
| 77        | <pre>self.inputbits[:,2.symnosave+1.symnosave2+1.fromstate+1</pre>        |
|           | tostate1 enoch1+11=bitesymbol2  |
| 79        | salf inputbic. 3 symposympotic symposympotic                              |
| 10        | totatatil opoblilibitationmbal2   |
|           | costate+1,epocni+1]-bitssymbols   |
| 79        |   |
| 80        |   |
| 81        | <pre>#println(bitctr)</pre>   |
| 82        | bitctr2=bitctr2+self.Nbits  |
| 83        | end #while bitctr2  |
| 84        | bitctr1=bitctr1+self.Nbits  |
| 85        | end #while bitctr1  |
| 86        | bitctr=bitctr+self.Nbits  |
| 87        | end #while  |
| 88        | end #end state  |
| 89        | <pre>self.fromtostate[:,:,epoch1+1]=allstates</pre>                       |
| 90        | end #end epoch1   |
| 91        | end #end setdecoderinfo   |
| 92        |   |
| 03        | #   |
| 95        | и<br>   |
| 94        |   |
| 95        | <pre>runction encode(self::SnapeCodeFun,bits1,bits2,bits3)</pre>          |
| 96        | <pre>symnol=bin2dec(bits1)</pre>  |
| 97        | symnosavel=symnol   |
| 98        | symno2=bin2dec(bits2)   |
| 99        | symnosave2=symno2   |
| 100       | symno3=bin2dec(bits3)   |
|           |   |

```
101
      symnosave3=symno3
102
      if (¬self.doconstanttarget)
103
        xcyclecount=self.epoch
104
      else
        xcyclecount=0
105
106
      end
107
108
      tosym=self.xcycle[xcyclecount+1]
109
110
111
      An=mod(symnol+self.sumrotcount,self.M)
112
      An1=mod(An+symno2, self.M)
113
114
115
      An2=mod(symno3+An1,self.M)
116
117
118
119
      coderot=mod(An2+tosym, self.M)
120
121
122
      self.sumrotcount=mod(coderot+self.sumrotcount,self.Nstate)
123
      self.epoch=mod(self.epoch+1, self.Nepochs)
124
      return symnosave1, symnosave2, symnosave3, coderot
125
      end #end encode
126
127
128
      function computemetric(r1, r2, r3, r4, output)
129
      out11=output[1,1]
      out12=output[1,2]
130
      out13=output[1,3]
131
      out14=output[1,4]
132
      out21=output[2,1]
133
134
      out22=output[2,2]
      out23=output[2,3]
135
      out24=output[2,4]
136
137
      n1=(r1[1]-out11)^2+(r1[2]-out21)^2
      n2=(r2[1]-out12)^2+(r2[2]-out22)^2
138
      n3=(r3[1]-out13)^2+(r3[2]-out23)^2
139
      n4=(r4[1]-out14)^2+(r4[2]-out24)^2
140
141
      m=n1+n2+n3+n4
142
      return m
143
      end #end computemetric
144
      function viterbishapedecode(self::ShapeCodeFun,r1,r2,r3,r4)
145
      beststatemetric=Inf
146
      for state=0:self.Nstate-1
147
148
        nextmetricbest=Inf
149
        for prevstate=self.fromtostate[:,state+1,self.epoch_decode+1]'
150
          for symbol1=0:self.M-1
151
             for symbol2=0:self.M-1
152
              m=computemetric(r1,r2,r3,r4,self.trellisoutput[:,:,symbol1+1, ...
                   symbol2+1,prevstate+1,state+1, self.epoch_decode+1])
153
              nextmetric=self.metrics[prevstate+1]+m
154
              if (nextmetric<nextmetricbest)</pre>
155
                 nextmetricbest=nextmetric
```

```
156
                 global prevstatebest=prevstate
                 global symbolbest1=symbol1
157
158
                global symbolbest2=symbol2
                 statebest=state
159
160
              end
            end #symbol2
161
          end #symbol1
162
        end #for prevstate
163
        if (nextmetricbest < beststatemetric)</pre>
164
165
           beststatemetric = nextmetricbest
           self.beststate = state
166
167
        end
        self.nextmetrics[state+1]=nextmetricbest
168
        self.prevstatearray[state+1, self.front+1]=prevstatebest
169
170
        self.bestsymbol1array[state+1, self.front+1]=symbolbest1
171
        self.bestsymbol2array[state+1, self.front+1]=symbolbest2
      end #for state
172
      self.metrics=copy(self.nextmetrics)
173
      self.countbranches=self.countbranches+1
174
      decodeout=0
175
176
      bitsout1=[0;0]
      bitsout2=[0;0]
177
178
      bitsout3=[0;0]
      if (self.countbranches>self.Viterbiwindowwidth)
179
        state=self.beststate
180
        idx=self.front
181
        epoch1=self.epoch_decode
182
        prevstate=[]
183
184
        lastepoch=[]
185
        prevstatbestsymbol1=[]
        prevstatbestsymbol2=[]
186
        for i=1:self.Viterbiwindowwidth
187
          prevstate=self.prevstatearray[state+1,idx+1]
188
189
          prevstatbestsymbol1=self.bestsymbol1array[state+1,idx+1]
190
          prevstatbestsymbol2=self.bestsymbol2array[state+1,idx+1]
191
192
          idx=mod(idx-1, self.Viterbiwindowwidth)
          lastepoch=epoch1
193
          epoch1=mod(epoch1-1, self.Nepochs)
194
          if (i!=self.Viterbiwindowwidth)
195
196
            state=prevstate
197
          end
198
        end # i
          bitsout1=self.inputbits[:,1,prevstatbestsymbol1+1, ...
199
              prevstatbestsymbol2+1,prevstate+1, state+1,lastepoch+1]
          bitsout2=self.inputbits[:,2,prevstatbestsymbol1+1, ...
200
              prevstatbestsymbol2+1,prevstate+1, state+1,lastepoch+1]
          bitsout3=self.inputbits[:,3,prevstatbestsymbol1+1, ...
201
              prevstatbestsymbol2+1,prevstate+1, state+1,lastepoch+1]
          decodeout=1
202
203
      end #if
      self.front=mod(self.front+1,self.Viterbiwindowwidth)
204
      self.epoch_decode=mod(self.epoch_decode+1, self.Nepochs)
205
206
      return decodeout, bitsout1, bitsout2, bitsout3
207
      end #shape decoder viterbi
```

Code for Rate 2/3 (PPE)

```
1
     trellisoutput=zeros(Int64,2,3,M,Nstate,Nstate,Nepochs)
2
     inputbits=zeros(Int64, Nbits, 2, M, Nstate, Nstate, Nepochs)
3
4
     metrics=zeros(Nstate,1)
5
     nextmetrics=zeros(Nstate,1)
     prevstatearray=zeros(Int64, Nstate, Viterbiwindowwidth)
6
     fromtostate=zeros(Int64, Nstate, Nstate, Nepochs)
7
     bitqueue=zeros(Int64,Nbits,2,Viterbiwindowwidth)
8
     bitqueuefront=0
9
     bitqueueback=0
10
11
12
     bestsymbolarray=zeros(Int64, Nstate, Viterbiwindowwidth)
13
14
     function setdecoderinfo(self::ShapeCodeFun,doplot,allstates,testbitsM)
15
     if (doplot)
16
       xcyclesym=['A' 'B' 'C' 'D' 'E' 'F' 'G' 'H' 'I' 'J' 'K' 'L' 'M' 'N' ...
17
           '0' 'P']
       vplotsep=1
18
       xplotsep=1
19
       markersize=15
20
       mulist=[.062 .12 .18 .25 .31 .37 .43 .5 .562 .6245 .687 .75 .81 .87 ...
21
           .93 .98]
       fig,ax=subplots()
22
       ax[:axis]("off")
23
       ax[:invert_yaxis]()
24
     end
25
     testbits=testbitsM
26
27
     for epoch1=0:self.Nepochs-1
28
29
       if (doplot)
         plottime=epoch1
30
         plotx1=plottime
31
         plotx2=plottime+xplotsep
32
33
34
         ax[:text] (plotx2, -.3, "$ (xcyclesym[epoch1+1])")
35
       end
36
       if (self.doconstanttarget)
37
38
         xcyclecount=0
       else
39
         xcyclecount=epoch1
40
41
       end
42
       tosym=self.xcycle[xcyclecount+1]
43
44
       for state=0:self.M-1
45
         bitctr=0
46
         sumrotcountsave=state
47
         while (bitctr<(self.M*self.Nbits))</pre>
48
           bitssymbol1=testbits[bitctr+1:bitctr+self.Nbits]
49
           symno=bin2dec(bitssymbol1)
50
51
           symnosave=symno
```

```
self.sumrotcount=sumrotcountsave
52
           bitctr1=0
53
           while(bitctr1<(self.M*self.Nbits))</pre>
54
55
             bitssymbol2=testbits[bitctr1+1:bitctr1+self.Nbits]
56
57
             symno2=bin2dec(bitssymbol2)
                                               #conver secend symbol to decimel
58
             symnosave2=symno2
                                                                           #save ...
59
                 to a memory
60
             state_int1=mod(symno+self.sumrotcount,self.M) ...
61
                                      #intermediate state after taking ...
                 previosu number of rotation into account
             coderot1=mod(state_int1+tosym, self.M)
62
              state_final1=mod(self.sumrotcount+coderot1,self.M)
63
64
65
              #tosym=self.xcycle[xcyclecount+1]
              state_int2=mod(state_final1+symno2, self.M)
66
             coderot2=mod(state_int2+tosym, self.M)
67
             state_final2=mod(state_final1+coderot2,self.M)
68
69
70
71
             #tosym=self.xcycle[xcyclecount+1]
72
             coderot=mod(coderot1+coderot2,self.M)
73
74
             state_int3=mod(state_final2+coderot,self.M)
75
              state_interfinal=mod(state_int3+tosym,self.M)
76
77
             sumrotcount=mod(state_final2+state_interfinal, self.M)
78
79
             fromstate=state
80
81
             tostate=sumrotcount
              #println("symn1=$(symnosave) sym2=$(symnosave2)
82
                                                                 . . .
                 fromstate=$(fromstate) tostate=$(sumrotcount) ...
                 epoch=$(epoch1) ")
             self.trellisoutput[:,1,symnosave+1,fromstate+1,tostate+1 ...
83
                 ,epoch1+1]=self.const_pts[:,symnosave+1]
84
             self.trellisoutput[:,2,symnosave+1,fromstate+1,tostate+1, ...
85
                 epoch1+1]=self.const_pts[:,symnosave2+1]
             self.trellisoutput[:,3,symnosave+1,fromstate+1,tostate+1, ...
86
                 epoch1+1]=self.const_pts[:,coderot+1]
87
             #println(bitssymbol1)
88
             self.inputbits[:,1,symnosave+1,fromstate+1,tostate+1, ...
89
                 epoch1+1]=bitssymbol1
             self.inputbits[:,2,symnosave+1,fromstate+1,tostate+1, ...
90
                 epoch1+1]=bitssymbol2
             if (doplot)
91
                          fromy=sumrotcountsave*yplotsep
92
                          toy=sumrotcount*xplotsep
93
94
95
                          ax[:plot]([plotx1; plotx2],[fromy; toy],"k")
96
                          ax[:scatter](plotx1, fromy, c=:black)
97
                          ax[:scatter](plotx2, fromy, c=:black)
```

```
98
                           mu=mulist[state+1]
99
100
                           textx=(1-mu) *plotx1+mu*plotx2
101
                           texty=(641-mu) *fromy+mu*toy
                           tangle=(-180/pi)*atan((toy - fromy)/(plotx2 - plotx1))
102
                         ax[:text](textx,texty,"$(testbits[bitctr+1]) ...
103
                             $(testbits[bitctr+2])$ (testbits[bitctr+3])$ ...
                             (testbits[bitctr+4])/$(symnosave)$(coderot)", ...
                             rotation=tangle, horizontalalignment="left", ...
                             verticalalignment="bottom", rotation_mode="anchor")
                end #doplot
104
105
                       #println(bitctr)
                bitctr1=bitctr1+self.Nbits
106
              end #while bitctr1
107
108
              bitctr=bitctr+self.Nbits
109
          end #while
110
        end #end state
        self.fromtostate[:,:,epoch1+1]=allstates
111
      end #end epoch1
112
      end #end setdecoderinfo
113
114
115
      function encode(self::ShapeCodeFun,bits1,bits2)
116
      symnol=bin2dec(bits1)
117
      symnosave1=symno1
118
      symno2=bin2dec(bits2)
119
      symnosave2=symno2
      if (¬self.doconstanttarget)
120
121
        xcyclecount=self.epoch
122
     else
123
        xcyclecount=0
124
     end
125
126
127
     tosym=self.xcycle[xcyclecount+1]
128
      state_int1=mod(symno1+self.sumrotcount,self.M)
129
130
      coderot1=mod(state_int1+tosym, self.M)
      state_final1=mod(coderot1+self.sumrotcount,self.M)
131
132
      state_int2=mod(symno2+state_final1, self.M)
133
134
      coderot2=mod(state_int2+tosym, self.M)
135
      state_final2=mod(coderot2+state_final1,self.M)
136
137
      coderot=mod(coderot1+coderot2,self.M)
      state_int3=mod(state_final2+coderot,self.M)
138
      state_interfinal=mod(state_int3+tosym, self.M)
139
140
      self.sumrotcount=mod(state_interfinal+state_final2,self.M)
141
142
      self.epoch=mod(self.epoch+1, self.Nepochs)
      return symnosave1, symnosave2, coderot
143
144
      end #end encode
145
      function computemetric(r1,r2,r3,output)
146
147
      out11=output[1,1]
148
      out12=output[1,2]
149
      out13=output[1,3]
```

```
out21=output[2,1]
150
151
      out22=output[2,2]
152
      out23=output[2,3]
153
      n1=(r1[1]-out11)^2+(r1[2]-out21)^2
      n2=(r2[1]-out12)^2+(r2[2]-out22)^2
154
155
      n3=(r3[1]-out13)^2+(r3[2]-out23)^2
156
      m=n1+n2+n3
157
      return m
      end #end computemetric
158
159
      function viterbishapedecode(self::ShapeCodeFun,r1,r2,r3)
160
161
      beststatemetric=Inf
     for state=0:self.Nstate-1
162
        nextmetricbest=Inf
163
164
        for prevstate=self.fromtostate[:,state+1,self.epoch_decode+1]'
165
          for symbol=0:self.Nstate-1
            m=computemetric(r1,r2,r3,self.trellisoutput[:,:,symbol+1, ...
166
                prevstate+1, state+1, self.epoch_decode+1])
            nextmetric=self.metrics[prevstate+1]+m
167
            if (nextmetric<nextmetricbest)</pre>
168
169
              nextmetricbest=nextmetric
              global prevstatebest=prevstate
170
171
              global symbolbest=symbol
              statebest=state
172
            end
173
          end #symbol
174
        end #for prevstate
175
        if (nextmetricbest < beststatemetric)</pre>
176
177
           beststatemetric = nextmetricbest
178
           self.beststate = state
179
        end
        self.nextmetrics[state+1]=nextmetricbest
180
        self.prevstatearray[state+1, self.front+1]=prevstatebest
181
182
        self.bestsymbolarray[state+1,self.front+1]=symbolbest
      end #for state
183
      self.metrics=copy(self.nextmetrics)
184
185
      self.countbranches=self.countbranches+1
      decodeout=0
186
      bitsout1=[0;0]
187
      bitsout2=[0;0]
188
189
      if (self.countbranches>self.Viterbiwindowwidth)
190
        state=self.beststate
191
        idx=self.front
        epoch1=self.epoch_decode
192
193
        prevstate=[]
        lastepoch=[]
194
195
        prevstatbestsymbol=[]
        for i=1:self.Viterbiwindowwidth
196
197
          prevstate=self.prevstatearray[state+1,idx+1]
198
199
          prevstatbestsymbol=self.bestsymbolarray[state+1,idx+1]
200
          idx=mod(idx-1, self.Viterbiwindowwidth)
          lastepoch=epoch1
201
202
          epoch1=mod(epoch1-1, self.Nepochs)
203
          if (i!=self.Viterbiwindowwidth)
204
            state=prevstate
```

| 205 | end  |
|-----|--|
| 206 | end # i  |
| 207 | <pre>bitsout1=self.inputbits[:,1,prevstatbestsymbol+1,</pre>       |
|     | prevstate+1,state+1,lastepoch+1]                                   |
| 208 | <pre>bitsout2=self.inputbits[:,2,prevstatbestsymbol+1,</pre>       |
|     | prevstate+1,state+1,lastepoch+1]                                   |
| 209 | decodeout=1  |
| 210 | end #if  |
| 211 | <pre>self.front=mod(self.front+1,self.Viterbiwindowwidth)</pre>    |
| 212 | <pre>self.epoch_decode=mod(self.epoch_decode+1,self.Nepochs)</pre> |
| 213 | return decodeout, bitsout1, bitsout2                               |
| 214 | end #shape decoder viterbi   |
|     |  |

Code for Rate 3/4 (PPE)

```
1
2
3
4
     trellisoutput=zeros(Int64,2,n,M,M,Nstate,Nstate,Nepochs)
\mathbf{5}
     inputbits=zeros(Int64, Nbits, k, M, M, Nstate, Nstate, Nepochs)
6
     metrics=zeros(Nstate,1)
     nextmetrics=zeros(Nstate,1)
7
     prevstatearray=zeros(Int64,Nstate,Viterbiwindowwidth)
8
     fromtostate=zeros(Int64,Nstate,Nstate,Nepochs)
9
     bitqueue=zeros(Int64,Nbits,k,Viterbiwindowwidth)
10
11
     bitqueuefront=0
12
     bitqueueback=0
13
     bestsymbollarray=zeros(Int64,Nstate,Viterbiwindowwidth)
14
     bestsymbol2array=zeros(Int64,Nstate,Viterbiwindowwidth)
15
16
17
     function setdecoderinfo(self::ShapeCodeFun,doplot,allstates,testbitsM)
18
19
     if (doplot)
20
     end
21
     testbits=testbitsM
22
23
     for epoch1=0:self.Nepochs-1
^{24}
25
       if (doplot)
26
27
       end
       if (self.doconstanttarget)
28
        xcyclecount=0
29
       else
30
         xcyclecount=epoch1
31
32
       end
33
       tosym=self.xcycle[xcyclecount+1]
34
35
       for state=0:self.Nstate-1
36
         bitctr=0
37
```

```
sumrotcountsave=state
38
         while (bitctr<(self.M*self.Nbits))</pre>
39
40
           bitssymbol1=testbits[bitctr+1:bitctr+self.Nbits]
41
           symno=bin2dec(bitssymbol1)
           symnosave=symno
42
           self.sumrotcount=sumrotcountsave
43
           bitctr1=0
44
           while (bitctrl<(self.M*self.Nbits))</pre>
45
             bitssymbol2=testbits[bitctr1+1:bitctr1+self.Nbits]
46
47
             symno2=bin2dec(bitssymbol2)
                                                #conver secend symbol to decimel
48
49
              symnosave2=symno2
                                                                            #save ...
50
                 to a memory
51
52
             bitctr2=0
53
             while (bitctr2<(self.M*self.Nbits))</pre>
54
                bitssymbol3=testbits[bitctr2+1:bitctr2+self.Nbits]
55
                symno3=bin2dec(bitssymbol3)
56
57
                symnosave3=symno3
                #println(symno3)
58
59
                An=mod(symno+self.sumrotcount,self.M)
60
                    #intermediate state after taking previosu number of ...
                    rotation into account
                coderot1=mod(An+tosym, self.M)
61
                An1=mod(self.sumrotcount+coderot1,self.M)
62
63
                #tosym=self.xcycle[xcyclecount+1]
64
                An2=mod(An1+symno2,self.M)
65
                coderot2=mod(An2+tosym, self.M)
66
                An3=mod(An1+coderot2,self.M)
67
68
                An4=mod(An3+symno3, self.M)
69
                coderot3=mod(An4+tosym,self.M)
70
71
                An5=mod(coderot3+An3,self.M)
72
               #tosym=self.xcycle[xcyclecount+1]
73
               coderot=mod(coderot1+coderot2+coderot3,self.M)
74
75
76
               An6=mod(An5+coderot,self.M)
77
               An7=mod(An6+tosym, self.M)
               sumrotcount=mod(An5+An7, self.Nstate)
78
79
80
               fromstate=state
81
               tostate=sumrotcount
82
83
               #println("symn1=$(symnosave) sym2=$(symnosave2) ...
                   sym3=$(symnosave3) parity=$(coderot) ...
                   fromstate=$(fromstate) tostate=$(sumrotcount) ...
                   epoch=$(epoch1) ")
84
85
               self.trellisoutput[:,1,symnosave+1,symnosave2+1,fromstate+1, ...
                  tostate+1,epoch1+1]=self.const_pts[:,symnosave+1]
```

```
self.trellisoutput[:,2,symnosave+1,symnosave2+1,fromstate+1, ...
86
                   tostate+1,epoch1+1]=self.const_pts[:,symnosave2+1]
               self.trellisoutput[:,3,symnosave+1,symnosave2+1,fromstate+1, ...
87
                   tostate+1,epoch1+1]=self.const_pts[:,symnosave3+1]
               self.trellisoutput[:,4,symnosave+1,symnosave2+1,fromstate+1, ...
88
                   tostate+1,epoch1+1]=self.const_pts[:,coderot+1]
89
               #println(bitssymbol1)
90
               self.inputbits[:,1,symnosave+1,symnosave2+1,fromstate+1, ...
91
                   tostate+1,epoch1+1]=bitssymbol1
               self.inputbits[:,2,symnosave+1,symnosave2+1,fromstate+1, ...
92
                   tostate+1,epoch1+1]=bitssymbol2
               self.inputbits[:,3,symnosave+1,symnosave2+1,fromstate+1, ...
93
                   tostate+1,epoch1+1]=bitssymbol3
94
95
                       #println(bitctr)
96
              bitctr2=bitctr2+self.Nbits
97
              end #while bitctr2
98
                bitctr1=bitctr1+self.Nbits
99
100
              end #while bitctr1
101
              bitctr=bitctr+self.Nbits
          end #while
102
103
        end #end state
        self.fromtostate[:,:,epoch1+1]=allstates
104
     end #end epoch1
105
     end #end setdecoderinfo
106
107
108
      function encode(self::ShapeCodeFun,bits1,bits2,bits3)
109
     symnol=bin2dec(bits1)
110
     symnosave1=symno1
111
     symno2=bin2dec(bits2)
112
113
     symnosave2=symno2
114
      symno3=bin2dec(bits3)
      symnosave3=symno3
115
116
     if (¬self.doconstanttarget)
117
       xcyclecount=self.epoch
     else
118
119
        xcyclecount=0
120
     end
121
122
123
     tosym=self.xcycle[xcyclecount+1]
124
     An=mod(symnol+self.sumrotcount,self.M)
125
126
     coderot1=mod(An+tosym, self.M)
127
     An1=mod(coderot1+self.sumrotcount,self.M)
128
129
     An2=mod(symno2+An1,self.M)
130
     coderot2=mod(An2+tosym, self.M)
131
     An3=mod(coderot2+An1,self.M)
132
133
     An4=mod(symno3+An3,self.M)
134
      coderot3=mod(An4+tosym, self.M)
135
     An5=mod(coderot3+An3,self.M)
```

```
136
137
      coderot=mod(coderot1+coderot2+coderot3,self.M)
138
139
      An6=mod(An5+coderot,self.M)
140
141
      An7=mod(An6+tosym, self.M)
      self.sumrotcount=mod(An7+An5,self.Nstate)
142
143
      self.epoch=mod(self.epoch+1,self.Nepochs)
144
145
      return symnosave1, symnosave2, symnosave3, coderot
      end #end encode
146
147
      function computemetric(r1,r2,r3,r4,output)
148
      out11=output[1,1]
149
      out12=output[1,2]
150
151
      out13=output[1,3]
152
      out14=output[1,4]
      out21=output[2,1]
153
      out22=output[2,2]
154
      out23=output[2,3]
155
156
      out24=output[2,4]
      n1=(r1[1]-out11)^2+(r1[2]-out21)^2
157
      n2 = (r2[1] - out12)^{2} + (r2[2] - out22)^{2}
158
      n3=(r3[1]-out13)^2+(r3[2]-out23)^2
159
      n4=(r4[1]-out14)^2+(r4[2]-out24)^2
160
      m=n1+n2+n3+n4
161
162
      return m
163
      end #end computemetric
164
165
      function viterbishapedecode(self::ShapeCodeFun,r1,r2,r3,r4)
      beststatemetric=Inf
166
      for state=0:self.Nstate-1
167
        nextmetricbest=Inf
168
169
        for prevstate=self.fromtostate[:,state+1,self.epoch_decode+1]'
170
          for symbol1=0:self.M-1
             for symbol2=0:self.M-1
171
              m=computemetric(r1,r2,r3,r4,self.trellisoutput[:,:,symbol1+1, ...
172
                   symbol2+1,prevstate+1,state+1, self.epoch_decode+1])
              nextmetric=self.metrics[prevstate+1]+m
173
               if (nextmetric<nextmetricbest)</pre>
174
175
                 nextmetricbest=nextmetric
176
                 global prevstatebest=prevstate
177
                 global symbolbest1=symbol1
178
                 global symbolbest2=symbol2
179
                 statebest=state
180
              end
181
            end #symbol2
182
          end #symbol1
183
        end #for prevstate
184
        if (nextmetricbest < beststatemetric)</pre>
185
           beststatemetric = nextmetricbest
186
           self.beststate = state
187
        end
188
        self.nextmetrics[state+1]=nextmetricbest
```

self.prevstatearray[state+1, self.front+1]=prevstatebest

self.bestsymbol1array[state+1, self.front+1]=symbolbest1

189

```
191
        self.bestsymbol2array[state+1, self.front+1]=symbolbest2
192
      end #for state
193
      self.metrics=copy(self.nextmetrics)
      self.countbranches=self.countbranches+1
194
      decodeout=0
195
     bitsout1=[0;0]
196
     bitsout2=[0;0]
197
     bitsout3=[0;0]
198
     if (self.countbranches>self.Viterbiwindowwidth)
199
200
        state=self.beststate
        idx=self.front
201
        epoch1=self.epoch_decode
202
        prevstate=[]
203
204
        lastepoch=[]
        prevstatbestsymbol1=[]
205
206
        prevstatbestsymbol2=[]
207
        for i=1:self.Viterbiwindowwidth
          prevstate=self.prevstatearray[state+1,idx+1]
208
209
          prevstatbestsymbol1=self.bestsymbol1array[state+1,idx+1]
210
211
          prevstatbestsymbol2=self.bestsymbol2array[state+1,idx+1]
          idx=mod(idx-1, self.Viterbiwindowwidth)
212
213
          lastepoch=epoch1
          epoch1=mod(epoch1-1, self.Nepochs)
214
          if (i!=self.Viterbiwindowwidth)
215
            state=prevstate
216
          end
217
        end # i
218
219
          bitsout1=self.inputbits[:,1,prevstatbestsymbol1+1, ...
              prevstatbestsymbol2+1,prevstate+1, state+1,lastepoch+1]
          bitsout2=self.inputbits[:,2,prevstatbestsymbol1+1, ...
220
              prevstatbestsymbol2+1,prevstate+1, state+1,lastepoch+1]
          bitsout3=self.inputbits[:,3,prevstatbestsymbol1+1 ...
221
              , prevstatbestsymbol2+1, prevstate+1, state+1, lastepoch+1]
          decodeout=1
222
      end #if
223
      self.front=mod(self.front+1, self.Viterbiwindowwidth)
224
      self.epoch_decode=mod(self.epoch_decode+1,self.Nepochs)
225
      return decodeout,bitsout1,bitsout2,bitsout3
226
      end #shape decoder viterbi
227
228
229
    #
230
      function viterbishapecodeflush(self::ShapeCodeFun)
231
     bitsout=zeros(Int64, self.Nbits, self.Viterbiwindowwidth-1)
232
      state=self.beststate
233
234
      epoch1=mod(self.epoch_decode-1,self.Nepochs)
      idx=mod(self.front-1,self.Viterbiwindowwidth)
235
236
      for i=1:self.Viterbiwindowwidth-1
237
        prevstate=self.prevstatearray[state+1,idx+1]
238
        lastepoch=epoch1
        bits1=self.inputbits[:,prevstate+1,state+1,lastepoch+1]
239
        idx=mod(idx-1, self.Viterbiwindowwidth)
240
241
        epoch1=mod(epoch1-1, self.Nepochs)
242
        bitsout[:,self.Viterbiwindowwidth-1-i]=bits1
243
        state=prevstate
```

```
244
     end #for
     end #viterbishapecodeflush
245
246
   #------
                                   _____
247
248
     function bitqueuein(self::ShapeCodeFun,bits1,bits2,bits3)
     self.bitqueue[:,1,self.bitqueuefront+1]=bits1
249
     self.bitqueue[:,2,self.bitqueuefront+1]=bits2
250
     self.bitqueue[:,3,self.bitqueuefront+1]=bits3
251
     self.bitqueuefront = mod(self.bitqueuefront + 1, self.Viterbiwindowwidth)
252
253
     end
254
     function bitqueueout(self::ShapeCodeFun)
255
     bits1=self.bitqueue[:,1,self.bitqueueback+1]
256
     bits2=self.bitqueue[:,2,self.bitqueueback+1]
257
     bits3=self.bitqueue[:,3,self.bitqueueback+1]
258
259
     self.bitqueueback = mod(self.bitqueueback + 1, self.Viterbiwindowwidth)
260
     return bits1, bits2 , bits3
     end
261
262
263 #create object of ShapeCodeFun-----
264
265
266
     a=ShapeCodeFun(M,Viterbiwindowwidth,Nstate,Nepochs,Nbits,
                    fromtodist,cumrotoffset,const_pts,xcycle,0,
267
                    0, doconstanttarget, trellisoutput, inputbits, ...
268
                        fromtostate, metrics,
                    nextmetrics,0,prevstatearray,0,0,0,bitqueue,0,0, ...
269
                        bestsymbol1array, bestsymbol2array)
270
271
272
     setdecoderinfo(a, doplot, allstates, testbits)
     resetshapecoder(a)
273
     resetshapedecoder(a)
274
275
276 end #doshapecode
277
278 nerrortocount=100
279
280 Eb=1
281 R=1
282 Es=Nbits*Eb*R
283 Esscale=sqrt(3*Es/(2*(M-1)))
284 Rcoded=k/n
285 Escoded=sqrt(Nbits*Eb*Rcoded*3/(2*(M-1)))
286 theorprobQPSK=[]
287 theorprobBPSK=[]
288 theoprobMquam=[]
289 for SNR in SNRrangetheo
290
     println("snr=$(SNR)")
291
292
     N0=Eb*10^ (-SNR/10)
     EbN0=Eb/N0
293
294
295
     push!(theorprobQPSK, (1 - (1-qf(sqrt(2*EbN0)))^2))
296
     push!(theorprobBPSK, (qf(sqrt(2*EbN0))))
297
```

```
298
      push!(theoprobMquam, ...
          (1-(1-2*(1-sqrt(1/M))*qf(sqrt((3/(M-1))*Nbits*EbN0)))^2))
299
   end
300
301
302 r=[0.0 0.0]
303 if (doMquam)
      snrctr=0
304
305
306
      errctr=[]
      errctr_bits=[]
307
      nsyms=[]
308
      for SNR in SNRrangeex
309
        println("snr=$(SNR)")
310
311
        snrctr=snrctr+1
312
        N0=Eb*10^ (-SNR/10)
313
        EbN0=Eb/N0
        #println("N0=$(N0) EbN0=$(EbN0)")
314
315
        sigma2=N0/2
316
317
        sigma=sqrt(sigma2)
318
319
        push!(errctr,0)
        push!(errctr_bits,0)
320
321
        push!(nsyms,0)
322
323
324
325
        while(errctr[snrctr]<nerrortocount)</pre>
326
          nsyms[snrctr]=nsyms[snrctr]+1
          bits=randombits(Nbits)
327
          symno=bin2dec(bits)
328
          constpts=Esscale*const_pts[:, symno+1]
329
330
331
          noise=sigma*randn(1,2)
332
333
          r[1]=constpts[1]+noise[1]
          r[2]=constpts[2]+noise[2]
334
335
          decodesymno=mquamdemod(r/Esscale, const_pts, const_axis)
336
337
338
          #println("decodesymno=$(decodesymno) symno=$(symno)")
339
          if (decodesymno != symno)
340
341
            errctr[snrctr]=errctr[snrctr]+1
342
343
            errctr_bits[snrctr] = errctr_bits[snrctr] + ...
                 sum(Int64.(decodesymno .!= symno))
344
345
            println("SNR=$(SNR):uncoded error no=$(errctr[snrctr])")
346
             #println("decodesymno=$(decodesymno) symno=$(symno)")
347
          end
         if (errctr[snrctr]!=0 && errctr[snrctr]/nsyms[snrctr]≤GraphPsrange)
348
349
            break
350
          end
                 #end break while
351
        end #while errctr
```

```
352
        if (errctr[snrctr]/nsyms[snrctr] < GraphPsrange)</pre>
353
          break
354
        end #end brek for
      end #for snr
355
   end #if(doqpsk)
356
357
   if (doshapecode)
358
359
        errctr_coded=[]
        errctr_bits_coded=[]
360
361
        nsyms_coded=[]
        snrctr=0
362
        for SNR in SNRrange
363
           println("SNRShapeCode=$(SNR)")
364
365
           snrctr=snrctr+1
366
           N0=Eb*10^ (-SNR/10)
367
           EbN0=Eb/N0
368
           sigma2=N0/2
           sigma=sqrt(sigma2)
369
           push!(errctr_coded,0)
370
           push!(errctr_bits_coded,0)
371
372
           push! (nsyms_coded, 0)
373
           while(errctr_coded[snrctr]<nerrortocount)</pre>
374
             nsyms_coded[snrctr]=nsyms_coded[snrctr]+3
375
             if (rem(nsyms_coded[snrctr],10000)==0 && (nsyms_coded[snrctr]> ...
376
                 10000)
               println("number of symbol=$(nsyms_coded[snrctr])")
377
378
             end
379
380
381
382
383
             bits1=randombits(Nbits)
384
             bits2=randombits(Nbits)
385
             bits3=randombits(Nbits)
386
             sym1, sym2, sym3, parity=encode(a, bits1, bits2, bits3)
387
             bitqueuein(a, bits1, bits2, bits3)
388
             s1=Escoded*a.const_pts[:,sym1+1]
389
             s2=Escoded*a.const_pts[:,sym2+1]
390
391
             s3=Escoded*a.const_pts[:,sym3+1]
392
             s4=Escoded*a.const_pts[:,parity+1]
393
             noise1=sigma*randn(2,1)
             noise2=sigma*randn(2,1)
394
             noise3=sigma*randn(2,1)
395
             noise4=sigma*randn(2,1)
396
397
             r1=s1+noise1
398
             r2=s2+noise2
399
             r3=s3+noise3
             r4=s4+noise4
400
401
402
             decodeout,bitsout1,bitsout2,bitsout3=viterbishapedecode ...
                 (a, r1/Escoded, r2/Escoded, r3/Escoded, r4/Escoded)
403
404
             if (decodeout==1)
405
               inbits1, inbits2, inbits3=bitqueueout(a)
```
```
#println("inbits 1=$(inbits1) bitsout1=$(bitsout1) inbits ...
406
                  2=$(inbits2) bitsout2=$(bitsout2) inbits 3=$(inbits3)
                                                                              . . .
                  bitsout3=$(bitsout3)")
              if (inbits1!=bitsout1 || inbits2!=bitsout2 || inbits3!=bitsout3)
407
                println("SNR=$(SNR):coded error no=$(errctr_coded[snrctr])")
408
409
              end
              #println("inbit+sum(Int64.(inbits2 .!= bitsout2))s=$(inbits) ...
410
                  bitsout=$(bitsout)")
              errctr_coded[snrctr]=errctr_coded[snrctr]+ ...
411
                  Int64(any(inbits1!=bitsout1))+ ...
                  Int64(any(inbits2!=bitsout2))+Int64(any(inbits3!=bitsout3))
              errctr_bits_coded[snrctr] = errctr_bits_coded[snrctr] + ...
412
                  sum(Int64.(inbits1 .!= bitsout1))+ sum(Int64.(inbits2 .!= ...
                  bitsout2))+ sum(Int64.(inbits3 .!= bitsout3))
            end #decodeout
413
414
            if (errctr_coded[snrctr]!=0 && ...
                errctr_coded[snrctr]/nsyms_coded[snrctr]<GraphPsrange)</pre>
415
              break
416
            end
                  #end break while
        end #while error count
417
        if (errctr_coded[snrctr]/nsyms_coded[snrctr] < GraphPsrange)
418
419
          break
        end #end break for
420
        @save "$(M)QAMrate34method1$(datetoday).jld"
421
      end #for SNRrangeShapecode
422
423 end #doshapecode
424 legendstr=[]
   push!(legendstr,"Uncoded QPSK(th) SER")
425
426
   push!(legendstr, "Uncoded BPSK(th) SER")
   push!(legendstr,"Uncoded $(M)QAM(th) SER")
427
428
429
   if (doMquam)
     push!(legendstr, "Uncoded $(M)QAM(ex) SER")
430
     push!(legendstr, "Uncoded $(M)QAM(ex) BER")
431
432
   end
433
   if (doshapecode)
     push!(legendstr, "Rate 3/4 CAC $(M)QAM SER")
434
     push!(legendstr,"Rate 3/4 CAC $(M)QAM BER")
435
436
   end
437 len=length(SNRrange)
438
439
   fig1,ax1=subplots()
440
   ax1[:semilogy](collect(0:1:length(theorprobQPSK)-1), ...
        theorprobQPSK, "g:", marker="^")
   ax1[:semilogy](collect(0:1:length(theorprobBPSK)-1), ...
441
        theorprobBPSK, "b:", marker="<")</pre>
   ax1[:semilogy](collect(0:1:length(theoprobMquam)-1), ...
442
        theoprobMquam, "k:", marker=">")
443
   if (doMquam)
444
      ax1[:semilogy](collect(0:1:length(errctr)-1), ...
445
          errctr./(nsyms), "r", marker="v")
      ax1[:semilogy](collect(0:1:length(errctr_bits)-1), ...
446
          errctr_bits./(nsyms*Nbits),"r:",marker="d")
447
   end
448
```

```
449 if (doshapecode)
     ax1[:semilogy] (collect(0:1:length(errctr_coded)-1), ...
450
         errctr_coded./nsyms_coded,"c",marker="s")
     ax1[:semilogy](collect(0:1:length(errctr_coded)-1), ...
451
         errctr_bits_coded./(Nbits*nsyms_coded),"c:",marker="o")
452 end
453
454
455 ax1[:legend](legendstr)
456 ax1[:set_ylim]([GraphPsrange,10.0^-0])
457 ax1[:grid](color="k", linestyle="--")
458 xlabel(L"(SNR)_{dB}")
459 ylabel(L"P_s, P_b" )
460 xticks(SNRrangetheo)
461 toc()
462 Ps=-1*Int(log10(GraphPsrange))
463 savefig("BER$(M)QUAMSCSNR$(SNRrange[end])Ps$(Ps) ...
       Rate34method2$(datetoday).pdf",dpi=1500)
464 @save "$(M)QAMrate34method2$(datetoday).jld"
```

## B.3 Python Code

Python Code for Signal Point Target Code Using QPSK Constellation

```
1
2 #!/usr/bin/env python3
3 # -*- coding: utf-8 -*-
4 """
5 Created on Wed Jun 27 08:58:24 2018
6
\overline{7}
   @author: munibun
   .....
8
9
10 SNRrange=8 # It will count SNRrange-1
11 import time
12 start_time = time.time()
13
14 import numpy as np
15 import math
16 import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
17
18 def qf(x):
       return .5*math.erfc(x/math.sqrt(2))
19
20
21 def qpskdemod(r):
      if (r[1]≥0):
22
           bit1=1
23
       else:
24
          bit1=0
25
26
     if (r[0]≥0):
```

```
bit2=1
27
       else:
^{28}
29
           bit2=0
30
       return 2*bit1+bit2
31
32
33 def randombits():
       genrand=np.random.rand(2,1)
34
35
       bits=np.zeros(shape=(2,1),dtype=int).reshape(2,)
       if genrand[0]>.5:
36
           bits[0]=1
37
       else:
38
           bits[0]=0
39
       if genrand[1]>.5:
40
^{41}
           bits[1]=1
42
       else:
            bits[1]=0
43
44
       return bits
45
46
  class ShapeCodeFunctions1:
47
       M=int(4)
48
       viterbiwindowwidth=int(10)
49
50
       def __init__(self,doconstanttarget):
                                                     #basic constructor
51
52
            self.doconstanttarget=doconstanttarget
53
54
            self.Nstate= self.M
55
            self.Nepoch=self.M
56
57
            self.Nbits=int(math.log2(self.M))
58
59
            self.const_pts=np.transpose(np.array([[-1,-1],
                                                                    #D(0)
60
61
                                                      [1,-1],
                                                                    #C(1)
62
                                                      [-1,1],
                                                                    #A(2)
63
                                                     [1,1]]).astype(int))
                                                                                #B(3))
64
65
            self.fromtodist=np.array([[0,3,1,2],
66
67
                                        [1,0,2,3],
68
                                        [3,2,0,1],
69
                                        [2,1,3,0]]).astype(int)
70
71
            self.cumrotoffset=np.array([[0,2,3,1],
72
73
                                           [1,0,2,3],
74
                                           [2,3,1,0],
75
                                           [3,1,0,2]]).astype(int)
76
77
            if (not(doconstanttarget)):
78
                self.xcycle=np.array([2,3,1,0]).astype(int)
79
80
            else:
81
                self.xcycle=np.array([2]).astype(int)
82
```

```
self.epoch=0
83
            self.sumrotcount=0
84
85
86
            #end of constructor-----
87
       def resetshapecoder(self):
88
           self.epoch=0
89
90
           self.sumrotcount=0
91
           #end of resetshapecoder-----
92
93
       def resetshapedecoder(self):
94
           self.epoch_decode=0
95
           self.front=0
96
97
           self.countbranches=0
98
           self.bitqueuefront=0
           self.bitqueueback=0
99
100
            #end of resershapedeocder-----
101
102
       def encode(self,bits):
103
104
                symno=2*bits[0]+bits[1]
105
                symnosave=symno
106
                symno=self.cumrotoffset[symno,self.sumrotcount]
107
                if(not(self.doconstanttarget)):
108
                   xcyclecount=self.epoch
               else:
109
110
                    xcyclecount=0
111
               tosym=self.xcycle[xcyclecount]
112
               coderot=self.fromtodist[symno,tosym]
               self.sumrotcount=(self.sumrotcount+coderot)%self.M
113
                self.epoch=(self.epoch+1)%4
114
               return symnosave, coderot
115
116
                #end of encode -----
117
118
119
       def setdecoderinfo(self,doplot):
           if(doplot):
120
                fig, ax = plt.subplots(1,1)
121
122
123
               plt.clf()
124
125
126
                for spine in plt.gca().spines.values():
127
                    spine.set_visible(False)
128
129
130
               ax.set_xlim(-.8, 4.2)
131
               ax.set_ylim(-.8, 3.2)
132
133
               plt.xticks(range(0, 5, 1), fontsize=14)
               plt.yticks(range(0, 4, 1), fontsize=14)
134
135
136
                #plt.tick_params(
137
                #
                        axis='x',
                                            # changes apply to the x-axis
```

134

```
138
                 #
                          which='both',
                                               # both major and minor ticks are ...
                     affected
139
                 #
                          bottom=False,
                                               # ticks along the bottom edge are off
140
                 #
                          top=False,
                                               # ticks along the top edge are off
                          labelbottom=False) # labels along the bottom edge ...
141
                     are off
142
                plt.gca().invert_yaxis()
143
                xplotsep=1
144
145
                vplotsep=1
                 #markersize = 15
146
                mulist = [0.15, 0.45, 0.60, 0.75]
147
                xcyclesym=['A', 'B', 'C', 'D']
148
149
            self.trellisoutput=np.ndarray(
150
151
            shape=(2,2,self.Nstate,self.Nstate,self.Nepoch),dtype=int)
152
            self.inputbits=np.ndarray(
            shape=(self.Nbits,self.Nstate,self.Nstate,self.Nepoch),dtype=int)
153
            self.metrics=np.zeros(shape=(self.Nstate,1),dtype=int)
154
            self.nextmetrics=np.zeros(shape=(self.Nstate,1),dtype=int)
155
156
            self.fromtostate=np.ndarray(
157
158
            shape=(self.Nstate,self.Nstate,self.Nepoch),dtype=int)
159
            testbits=[0,0,0,1,1,0,1,1]
160
161
            for epoch1 in range(self.Nepoch):
162
163
                 if(doplot):
164
                         plottime=epoch1
165
                         plotx1=plottime
166
167
                         plotx2=plottime+xplotsep
                         plt.text( plotx2,-.3,xcyclesym[plottime])
168
169
170
                 if (self.doconstanttarget):
                     xcyclecount=0
171
172
                 else:
173
                     xcyclecount=epoch1
174
                 targetsymbol=self.xcycle[xcyclecount]
175
176
177
                 for init_total_rot in range(self.M):
178
                     bitcount=0
                     init_total_rot_save=init_total_rot
179
                     #print("\n initial sum rot count(state)={0} target ...
180
                         symbol={1}".format(init_total_rot,self.xcycle[epoch1]))
181
182
                     while (bitcount< len(testbits)):</pre>
183
                         self.sumrotcount=init_total_rot_save
184
                         sumno=2*testbits[bitcount]+testbits[bitcount+1]
185
                         currentposition=self.cumrotoffset[sumno, self.sumrotcount]
186
                         codeoutput=self.fromtodist[currentposition,targetsymbol]
187
                         self.sumrotcount=(self.sumrotcount+codeoutput)%self.M
188
                         # print("bits=\{0\}\{1\} out=(\{2\}, \{3\})
                                                                . . .
                            sumrotcount={4}".format(testbits[bitcount] ...
```

135

|     | <pre>,testbits[bitcount+1],sumno,</pre>                                       |
|-----|---|
|     | codeoutput,self.sumrotcount))   |
| 189 | fromstate=init_total_rot  |
| 190 | tostate=self.sumrotcount  |
| 191 | <pre>self.trellisoutput[:,0,fromstate,tostate,epoch1]=</pre>                  |
|     | <pre>self.const_pts[:,sumno]</pre>  |
| 192 | <pre>self.trellisoutput[:,1,fromstate,tostate,epoch1]=</pre>                  |
|     | <pre>self.const_pts[:,codeoutput]</pre>                                       |
| 193 | <pre>self.inputbits[:,fromstate,tostate,epoch1]=</pre>                        |
|     | <pre>np.array([testbits[bitcount],</pre>                                      |
|     | <pre>testbits[bitcount+1]]).astype(int)</pre>                                 |
| 194 |   |
| 195 | if(doplot):   |
| 196 | from_pos=init_total_rot_save*yplotsep   |
| 197 | to_pos=self.sumrotcount*yplotsep  |
| 198 |   |
| 199 | pit.plot([plotx1,plotx2],[from_pos,to_pos],c='k')                             |
| 200 | plt.plot(plotx1, from_pos, 'ko')  |
| 201 | plt.plot(plotx2, from_pos, 'ko')  |
| 202 |   |
| 203 | strng="{U}{1}/{2}{3}".format(   |
| 204 | <pre>testbits[bitcount], testbits[bitcount+1], sumno, codeoutput)</pre>       |
| 205 |   |
| 206 | <pre>mu=mulist[init_total_rot]</pre>  |
| 207 | textx = (1-mu)*plotx1 + mu*plotx2   |
| 208 | $texty = (1-mu)*trom_pos + mu*to_pos$   |
| 209 | $tangle = (180/math.pl) * math.atan((to_pos$                                  |
|     | trom_pos)/(piotx2 - piotx1));   |
| 210 | $crains_angre - \dots$  |
|     | pre.gca().transbaca.transtorm_angres(   |
|     | $\operatorname{np}\operatorname{array}((\operatorname{tallyte}_{i})), \ldots$ |
| 011 | n]t toyt (toyty toyty strng color='r'   |
| 211 | fontsize=8 rotation=trans angle   |
|     | horizontalalignment='left'  |
|     | verticalalignment='bottom'  |
|     | rotation mode='anchor')   |
| 212 | hit count=hit count+2   |
| 212 | self_fromtostate[epoch]]=np_array([[0.0.0.0].                                 |
| 213 | [1.1.1.1].  |
| 214 | [2, 2, 2, 2]  |
| 216 | [2, 2, 2, 2]  |
| 210 | if(doplot):   |
| 218 | 11 (ach100) ·   |
| 219 | plt.savefig('trellisfromshapecodefunction_png'.dpi=1500)                      |
| 220 | nlt show()  |
| 220 | pre.5now()  |
| 221 | self enoch decode=0   |
| 223 | self.bitqueuefront=0  |
| 224 | self.bitqueueback=0   |
| 225 | self.front=0  |
| 226 | self.countbranches=0  |
| 227 | self.prevstatearrav=np.zeros((self.Nstate                                     |
|     | self.viterbiwindowwidth)).astvpe(int)   |
| 228 | self.bitgueue=np.zeros((self.Nbits  |
|     | self.viterbiwindowwidth)).astvpe(int)   |
| I   |   |

```
229
230
            #end of setdecoderinfo-----
231
232
        def computemetric(self,r1,r2,output):
             m=(r1[0]-output[0,0])**2+(r1[1]-output[1,0])**2 ...
233
                 +(r2[0]-output[0,1])**2 +(r2[1]-output[1,1])**2
234
             return m
235
        #end of compute metric-----
236
237
        def viterbishapedecoder(self,r1,r2):
238
            beststatemetric=math.inf
239
            for state in range(self.Nstate):
240
241
                bestnextmetric=math.inf
242
                for prevstate in self.fromtostate[:,state,self.epoch_decode]:
243
                    m=self.computemetric(r1,r2, ...
                        self.trellisoutput[:,:,prevstate,state,self.epoch_decode])
                    nextmetric=self.metrics[prevstate]+m
244
245
                    if(nextmetric<bestnextmetric):</pre>
246
247
                         bestnextmetric=nextmetric
                         bestprevstate=prevstate
248
249
                         statebest=state
                if(bestnextmetric<beststatemetric):</pre>
250
                    beststatemetric=bestnextmetric
251
                    self.beststate=state
252
253
254
                self.nextmetrics[state]=bestnextmetric
255
                self.prevstatearray[state, self.front]=bestprevstate
                #print('state: {0} bestprevstate={1} beststate={2} ...
256
                    bestmetric={3}\n'.format(state,bestprevstate,statebest, ...
                    int(bestnextmetric)))
            self.metrics[:]=self.nextmetrics[:]
257
258
            self.countbranches=self.countbranches+1
            decodeout=0
259
            bitsout=[0,0]
260
261
            if(self.countbranches>self.viterbiwindowwidth):
262
                state=self.beststate
263
                idx=self.front
264
265
                epoch1=self.epoch_decode
266
                for i in range(self.viterbiwindowwidth):
267
268
                    prevstate=self.prevstatearray[state,idx]
269
                    lastepoch=epoch1
270
271
                    epoch1=(epoch1-1)%self.Nepoch
272
                    idx=(idx-1)%self.viterbiwindowwidth
273
274
                     if(i!=self.viterbiwindowwidth-1):
275
                        state=prevstate
276
                decodeout=1
                bitsout=self.inputbits[:,prevstate,state,lastepoch]
277
278
279
            self.front=(self.front+1)%self.viterbiwindowwidth
280
            self.epoch_decode=(self.epoch_decode+1)%self.Nepoch
```

```
281
           return decodeout, bitsout
282
283
  #end of viterbishapedecoder-----
284
       def viterbishapedecoderflush(self):
285
          bitsout=np.zeros((self.Nbits,self.viterbiwindowwidth-1)).astype(int)
286
           state=self.beststate
287
           epoch1=(self.epoch_decode-1)%self.Nepoch
288
           idx=(self.front-1)%self.viterbiwindowwidth
289
290
           for i in range(self.viterbiwindowwidth-2):
              prevstate=self.prevstatearray[state,idx]
291
              lastepoch=epoch1
292
              bits=self.inputbits[:,prevstate,state,lastepoch]
293
               idx=(idx-1)%self.viterbiwindowwidth
294
               epoch1=(epoch1-1)%self.Nepoch
295
296
              bitsout[:,self.viterbiwindowwidth-2-i]=bits
297
               state=prevstate
298
299 #end of viterbishapedecoderflush-----
300
301 #end of viterbishapedecoderflush-----
302
303
       def bitqueuein(self,bits):
           self.bitqueue[:,self.bitqueuefront]=bits[:]
304
           self.bitqueuefront=(self.bitqueuefront+1)%self.viterbiwindowwidth
305
  #end of bitqueuein-----
306
       def bitqueueout(self):
307
           bits=self.bitqueue[:,self.bitqueueback]
308
309
           self.bitqueueback=(self.bitqueueback+1)%self.viterbiwindowwidth
310
           return bits
311 #end of bitqueueout ------
312
313 shapecodeclass1=ShapeCodeFunctions1(1)
314 shapecodeclass1.resetshapecoder()
315 shapecodeclass1.resetshapedecoder()
316 shapecodeclass1.setdecoderinfo(0)
317
318 nerrortocount=100
319 Eb=1
320 R=1
321 Es=2*Eb*R
322 Esscale=math.sqrt(Es/2)
323 Rcoded=.5
324 Escoded=math.sqrt(2*Eb*Rcoded/2)
325 doqpsk=1
326 doshapecode=1
327 snrctr=0
328 theorprobQPSK=[0]*SNRrange
329 theorprobBPSK=[0]*SNRrange
330 errctr=[0]*SNRrange
331 nsyms=[0]*SNRrange
332 errctr_coded=[0]*SNRrange
333 errctr_bits_coded=[0]*SNRrange
334 nsyms_coded=[0]*SNRrange
335
336 r=[0,0]
```

```
337
    for SNR in range(SNRrange):
338
339
        print('snr={0}\n'.format(SNR))
        N0=Eb*10**(-SNR/10)
340
        EbN0=Eb/N0
341
        theorprobQPSK[snrctr]=(1-(1-qf(math.sqrt(2*EbN0)))**2)
342
343
        theorprobBPSK[snrctr] = (qf(math.sqrt(2*EbN0)))
344
        sigma=math.sqrt(N0/2)
345
346
        if(doqpsk):
             #errctr.append(0)
347
             #nsyms.append(0)
348
            while (errctr[snrctr]<nerrortocount):</pre>
349
350
                 nsyms[snrctr]=nsyms[snrctr]+1
                 bits1=np.random.rand(2)>.5
351
352
                 bits2=bits1.astype(int)
353
                 symno=2*bits2[0]+bits2[1]
                 constpt=Esscale*shapecodeclass1.const_pts[:,symno]
354
                 noise1=sigma*np.random.randn(2)
355
                 r[0]=constpt[0]+noise1[0]
356
357
                 r[1]=constpt[1]+noise1[1]
                 decodesymno=qpskdemod(r)
358
                 if (decodesymno != symno):
359
                     errctr[snrctr]=errctr[snrctr]+1
360
361
        if (doshapecode):
362
363
             #errctr_coded.append(0)
             #errctr_bits_coded.append(0)
364
365
             #nsyms_coded.append(0)
366
            while(errctr_coded[snrctr]<nerrortocount):</pre>
                 nsyms_coded[snrctr]=nsyms_coded[snrctr]+1
367
                 bits3=np.random.rand(2)>.5
368
                 bits4=bits3.astype(int)
369
370
                 bits4=bits4.reshape((2,))
                 sym1, sym2=shapecodeclass1.encode(bits4)
371
                 shapecodeclass1.bitqueuein(bits4)
372
                 s1 = Escoded*shapecodeclass1.const_pts[:,sym1]
373
                 s2 = Escoded*shapecodeclass1.const_pts[:,sym2]
374
375
                 noise2=sigma*np.random.randn(2)
376
377
                 noise3=sigma*np.random.randn(2)
378
                 r1=s1+noise2
379
                 r2=s2+noise3
                 decodeout,bitsout= shapecodeclass1.viterbishapedecoder(r1,r2)
380
                 if (decodeout):
381
                     inbits = shapecodeclass1.bitqueueout()
382
383
                     errctr_coded[snrctr] = errctr_coded[snrctr] + ...
                         np.any((inbits) != (bitsout)).astype(int)
384
                     errctr_bits_coded[snrctr]=errctr_bits_coded[snrctr] ...
                         +sum(((inbits) != (bitsout)).astype(int))
385
        snrctr=snrctr+1
386
387
388
   lenn=len(range(SNRrange))
389
    legendstrs=[]
390
```

```
391 plt.semilogy(list(range(SNRrange)),theorprobQPSK,'g:')
392 plt.semilogy(list(range(SNRrange)),theorprobBPSK,'b:')
393
394 legendstrs.append('BPSK(th)')
395 legendstrs.append( 'QPSK(th)')
396
397 if (doqpsk):
        plt.semilogy(list(range(SNRrange)), np.array(errctr)/np.array(nsyms), 'r:')
398
        legendstrs.append( 'QPSK(ex)')
399
400
   if (doshapecode):
401
        plt.semilogy(list(range(SNRrange)), ...
402
            np.array(errctr_coded)/np.array(nsyms_coded), 'c')
        legendstrs.append( 'Shapecode(sym)')
403
        plt.semilogy(list(range(SNRrange)), ...
404
            np.array(errctr_bits_coded)/(2*np.array(nsyms_coded)),'c:')
405
        legendstrs.append( 'Shapecode(bit)')
406 plt.legend(legendstrs)
407 print("--- %s seconds ---" % (time.time() - start_time))
408 if (shapecodeclass1.doconstanttarget):
409
       plt.savefig('BERcurveconstatnttarget.png',dpi=1500)
410 else:
411
       plt.savefig('BERcurve.png',dpi=1500)
412 plt.show()
```

## Python Code for finding Free Euclidean Distance

```
1
2
3 from collections import defaultdict
4 import numpy as np
5 import matplotlib.pyplot as plt
6 import math
7 class CreatePath:
8
       def __init__(self,totalstates):
9
           self.vertices= totalstates
10
11
           self.statenode = defaultdict(list)
           self.branchlist=defaultdict(list)
12
13
           self.index=0
14
       def AddBranch(self,initstate,finalstate):
15
           self.statenode[initstate].append(finalstate)
16
17
       def CheckVisitedBranchs(self, initstate, targetstate, branchvisited, ...
18
           branch):
19
20
21
           branchvisited[initstate]= True
           branch.append(initstate)
22
           if (initstate ==targetstate):
23
^{24}
```

```
branchh=list(branch)
25
               self.branchlist[self.index]=branchh
26
27
               self.index=self.index+1
           else:
28
29
               for ind in self.statenode[initstate]:
30
                   if branchvisited[ind]==False:
31
                       self.CheckVisitedBranchs(ind, targetstate, ...
32
                           branchvisited, branch)
33
           branch.pop()
           branchvisited[initstate] = False
34
35
       def MakePaths(self,startingstate, targetstate):
36
           branchvisited =[False] * (self.vertices)
37
           branch = []
38
39
           self.CheckVisitedBranchs(startingstate, ...
               targetstate, branchvisited, branch)
40
41
42
43
44 def distancecal(r1,r2):
       return (r1[0]-r2[0])**2+(r1[1]-r2[1])**2
45
46
47 doplot=1
48 if doplot:
49
       for spine in plt.gca().spines.values():
50
51
                   spine.set_visible(False)
52
       plt.gca().invert_yaxis()
53
54
55
56 loopcontrol=1
57 Nepochinit=0
58 M=16
59 Nstate=128
60 Nbits=math.log2(M)
61 target=0
62 mulipliedfactor=19
63 const_axis=np.arange(-(2**(Nbits/2)-1),(2**(Nbits/2)+1),2,dtype=int)
64 axis1=np.kron(np.ones(shape=(1,int(2**(Nbits/2))),dtype=int),const_axis)
65 axis2=np.kron(const_axis,np.ones(shape=(1,int(2**(Nbits/2))),dtype=int))
66 const_pts=np.concatenate((axis1, axis2), axis=0)
67 print(const_pts)
68 #const_pts=np.array([[ -3, -3, -3, -3, -1, -1, -1, -1, 3, 3, 3, 3, 1, 1, ...
      1, 1], [-3, -1, 3, 1, -3, -1, 3, 1, -3, -1, 3, 1, -3, -1, 3, 1]], np.int32)
69 #-----0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8,9,10,11,12,13,14,15
70 #const_pts=const_pts[:,[1,0,15,5,14,2,8,6,9,10,4,13,7,11,12,3]]
71 print(const_pts)
72
73
74 if M==4:
75
       const_pts=np.array([[-1,1,1,-1],[-1,-1,1,1]],np.int32)
76 #bleow is dr sodha const for 16 QAM
77 #if M==16:
```

```
const_pts=np.array([[ -3, -3, -3, -3, -1, -1, -1, 3, 3, 3, 3, 1, ...
78 #
       1, 1, 1], [-3, -1, 3, 1, -3, -1, 3, 1, -3, -1, 3, 1, -3, -1, 3, ...
       1]],np.int32)
79 symbollist=list(range(M))
80 bestmindistance=0
81 #const_pts=np.transpose(const_pts)
82 #np.random.shuffle(const_pts)
83 #const_pts=np.transpose(const_pts)
84 #while(loopcontrol==1):
85
   for s in list(range(Nstate)):
86
87
        for offset in list(range(0-s,Nstate-s,1)):
88
89
            while(loopcontrol<3):</pre>
90
91
                Nepochinit=Nepochinit+1
92
93
                Nepoch=Nepochinit+1
94
95
                trellisoutput=np.zeros(shape=(2,2,Nstate,Nstate,Nepoch), ...
96
                     dtype=int) *10000
97
                trellisbranch=np.zeros(shape=(2,Nstate,Nstate,Nepoch),dtype=int)
98
99
                g = CreatePath (Nstate* (Nepoch+1))
100
                initnode=0
101
102
                if doplot:
103
                     plt.xticks(range(0, Nepoch+1, 1), fontsize=14)
                     plt.yticks(range(0, Nstate+1, 1), fontsize=14)
104
105
106
                for epoch in list(range(Nepoch)):
107
108
                     for state in list(range(Nstate)):
109
                         fromstate=state
110
                         symbolnum=0
111
                         #print(fromstate)
112
                         for symbol in symbollist:
113
                              #print(initnode)
114
115
116
                             newpoint=(symbol+state)%M
117
                             parity=(newpoint+target)%M
118
                             tostate=(mulipliedfactor*(parity+state)) %Nstate
119
                             fromy=fromstate
120
121
                             toy=tostate
122
                             trellisoutput[:,0,fromstate,tostate,epoch]= ...
                                 const_pts[:,symbol]
                             trellisoutput[:,1,fromstate,tostate,epoch] = ...
123
                                 const_pts[:,parity]
124
                             trellisbranch[0, fromstate, tostate, epoch] = symbol
                             trellisbranch[1, fromstate, tostate, epoch]=parity
125
126
                             g.AddBranch(fromy+initnode, initnode+Nstate+toy)
127
                     initnode=initnode+Nstate
128
```

```
129
130
131
                 d = Nepoch*Nstate+s+offset
132
133
                 g.MakePaths(s, d)
134
                 branchlist=defaultdict(list)
135
                 revisedbranchlist=defaultdict(list)
136
137
                 index=0
138
139
                 for row in g.branchlist:
140
141
                      for element in g.branchlist[row]:
142
143
                          branchlist[index].append(element% Nstate)
144
                      index=index+1
145
146
147
                 index=0
148
                 for keyy in branchlist:
149
150
                      checkk=branchlist[keyy]
                      if checkk.count(s) == 2 or checkk.count(s) == Nepoch+1:
151
152
                          for element in checkk:
153
                               revisedbranchlist[index].append(element)
154
                          index=index+1
155
156
157
                 indexsave=index
158
159
                 if doplot:
                      for epoch in list(range(Nepoch)):
160
                          plotx1=epoch
161
                          plotx2=epoch+1
162
163
                          for key in revisedbranchlist:
164
                               fromy=revisedbranchlist[key][plotx1]
165
                               toy=revisedbranchlist[key][plotx2]
166
                               plt.plot([plotx1,plotx2],[fromy,toy],c='k')
167
                               plt.plot(plotx1, fromy, 'ko')
168
                               plt.plot(plotx2, fromy, 'ko')
169
170
171
172
                 #phase 2
173
                 if(Nepoch>2):
174
175
                      Nepoch=Nepoch-1
176
                      g = CreatePath (Nstate* (Nepoch+1))
177
                      initnode=0
178
179
180
181
182
                      for epoch in list(range(Nepoch)):
183
184
                          for state in list(range(Nstate)):
```

| 185 | fromstate=state   |
|-----|---|
| 186 | symbolnum=0   |
| 187 | <pre>#print(fromstate)</pre>  |
| 188 | -   |
| 189 | for symbol in symbollist:   |
| 190 | #print(initnode)  |
| 191 | " <u>F</u> /  |
| 102 | newnoint=(symbol+state) %M  |
| 102 | narity= (newpoint+target) %M  |
| 104 | tostato-(multipliedfactor (paritylstato)) %Netato   |
| 194 | costate (multipliediactor*(party+state)) *mstate  |
| 195 | former formetete  |
| 196 |   |
| 197 | LOY=LOSLALE   |
| 198 | g.AddBranch (Iromy+Inithode, Inithode+Nstate+Loy)   |
| 199 | initnode=initnode+Nstate  |
| 200 |   |
| 201 |   |
| 202 |   |
| 203 | d = Nepoch*Nstate+s+offset  |
| 204 | branchlist=defaultdict(list)  |
| 205 | g.MakePaths(s, d)   |
| 206 |   |
| 207 | index1=0  |
| 208 |   |
| 209 |   |
| 210 | for row in g.branchlist:  |
| 211 |   |
| 212 | <pre>for element in g.branchlist[row]:</pre>  |
| 213 | <pre>branchlist[index1].append(element% Nstate)</pre>                                     |
| 214 | index1=index1+1   |
| 215 |   |
| 216 | for keyy in branchlist:   |
| 217 | checkk=branchlist[kevy]   |
| 218 | if checkk.count(s) == 2 or checkk.count(s) == Nepoch+1:                                   |
| 219 | for element in checkk:  |
| 220 | revisedbranchlist[index].append(element)  |
| 221 | index=index+1   |
| 222 |   |
| 223 |   |
| 224 |   |
| 224 | if doplot:  |
| 226 | for each in list (range (Nepoch)).  |
| 227 | nlotx1=enoch  |
| 221 | $plot x^2 = epoch^{-1}$   |
| 228 | for key in  |
| 229 | list (range (indexease len (rewigedbranghlist))).   |
| 222 |   |
| 230 | t current and hear ablight [key] [pictx1]   |
| 231 | <pre>coy-reviseabranchits(key)[piotx2] plt_plot([plotw1]plotw2] [fromy_tow1] = 151)</pre> |
| 232 | <pre>pro.pro.(protx1, protx2], [rromy, coy], C= 'K') plt.plot(plotx1, frame, lbst)</pre>  |
| 233 | pit.piot(piotxi, iromy, 'KO')   |
| 234 | pit.piot(piotx2, iromy, 'ko')   |
| 235 |   |
| 236 | alstancelist=[]   |
| 237 | for key in revisedbranchlist:   |
| 238 | <pre>temp_list=revisedbranchlist[key]</pre>   |

| 239   | <pre>if temp_list.count(s) != Nepoch+1 and temp_list.count(s) != Nepoch+2:</pre> |
|-------|--|
| 240   | distance=0   |
| 240   | for ind in list (range (len (temp list)-1)).                                     |
| 241   | distance=distance+ distancecal(trellisoutput[• 0                                 |
| 242   | town list find   |
|       | templist[ind+1] 0] trollicoutput[. 0 c c 0])+                                    |
|       | distances (trallicoutput [ . 1   |
|       | tomp ligt[ind] tomp ligt[ind+1] 0]   |
|       | trollicoutput[, 1 c c 0])  |
| 0.4.2 | distancelist append(distance)  |
| 243   |  |
| 244   | distancelist annend(1000)  |
| 246   |  |
| 240   |  |
| 248   | minimumpath=revisedbranchlist[distance]ist                                       |
|       | index(min(distancelist))]  |
| 249   |  |
| 250   | if doplot:   |
| 251   | <pre>for epoch in list(range(len(minimumpath)-1)):</pre>                         |
| 252   | plotx1=epoch   |
| 253   | plotx2=epoch+1   |
| 254   |  |
| 255   | <pre>fromy=minimumpath[plotx1]</pre>   |
| 256   | toy=minimumpath[plotx2]  |
| 257   | <pre>plt.plot([plotx1,plotx2],[fromy,toy],c='g')</pre>                           |
| 258   | <pre>plt.plot(plotx1, fromy, 'g')</pre>  |
| 259   | <pre>plt.plot(plotx2, fromy, 'g')</pre>  |
| 260   |  |
| 261   | alldistancelist=[]   |
| 262   | bestmindistance=1000   |
| 263   | <pre>for key1 in revisedbranchlist:</pre>  |
| 264   | ref_path=revisedbranchlist[key1]   |
| 265   | for key2 in revisedbranchlist:   |
| 266   | current_path=revisedbranchlist[key2]   |
| 267   | <pre>if (current_path != ref_path and len(current_path)==</pre>                  |
|       | len(rei_path)):  |
| 268   | distance=0   |
| 269   | distanco-distanco-distanco-di  |
| 270   | trollisoutput[, 0urront_path[ind]  |
|       | current path[ind+1] 0]   |
|       | trellisoutput[.0.  |
|       | ref path[ind].ref path[ind+1].0]) \  |
| 271   | +distancecal( trellisoutput[:,1,   |
|       | current_path[ind],   |
|       | current_path[ind+1],0],  |
|       | <pre>trellisoutput[:,1, ref_path[ind],</pre>                                     |
|       | <pre>ref_path[ind+1],0])</pre>   |
| 272   | if (distance <bestmindistance):< td=""></bestmindistance):<>                     |
| 273   | bestmindistance=distance   |
| 274   | final_reference_path=ref_path  |
| 275   | final_current_path=current_path  |
| 276   |  |
| 277   |  |
| 278   |  |

```
279
                loopcontrol=len(revisedbranchlist)
280
281
282
   if doplot:
        for epoch in list(range(len(final_reference_path)-1)):
283
                     plotx1=epoch
284
                     plotx2=epoch+1
285
286
                     fromy=final_reference_path[plotx1]
287
                     toy=final_reference_path[plotx2]
288
                     plt.plot([plotx1,plotx2],[fromy,toy],c='b')
289
                     plt.plot(plotx1, fromy, 'b')
290
                     plt.plot(plotx2, fromy, 'b')
291
292
                     fromy=final_current_path[plotx1]
                     toy=final_current_path[plotx2]
293
294
                     plt.plot([plotx1, plotx2], [fromy, toy], c='m')
295
                     plt.plot(plotx1, fromy, 'm')
                     plt.plot(plotx2, fromy, 'm')
296
297
   print(min(distancelist))
298
   print(bestmindistance)
299
   print(final_reference_path)
300
301 print(final_current_path)
   plt.figure()
302
303
   plt.plot(const_pts[0,:],const_pts[1,:],'ko')
304
   for ind in list(range(len(final_reference_path)-1)):
305
        initstate_ref=final_reference_path[ind]
306
307
        finalstate_ref=final_reference_path[ind+1]
308
        initstate_cur=final_current_path[ind]
        finalstate_cur=final_current_path[ind+1]
309
        print("epoch={}: Blue {}/{} magenta ...
310
            {}/{}".format(ind,trellisbranch[0,initstate_ref, ...
            finalstate_ref,0],trellisbranch[1,initstate_ref,finalstate_ref,0], ...
            trellisbranch[0,initstate_cur,finalstate_cur,0],trellisbranch[1, ...
            initstate_cur, finalstate_cur, 0]))
311
        print(trellisbranch[0, initstate_ref, finalstate_ref, 0],
312
            const_pts[:,trellisbranch[0,initstate_ref,finalstate_ref,0]])
313
        print(trellisbranch[1, initstate_ref, finalstate_ref, 0],
314
            const_pts[:,trellisbranch[1,initstate_ref,finalstate_ref,0]])
315
316
        print(trellisbranch[0, initstate_cur, finalstate_cur, 0],
317
            const_pts[:,trellisbranch[0,initstate_cur,finalstate_cur,0]])
        print(trellisbranch[1, initstate_cur, finalstate_cur, 0], ...
318
            const_pts[:,trellisbranch[1,initstate_cur,finalstate_cur,0]])
        x=[const_pts[0,trellisbranch[0,initstate_ref,finalstate_ref,0]], ...
319
            const_pts[0,trellisbranch[0,initstate_cur,finalstate_cur,0]]]
        y=[const_pts[1,trellisbranch[0,initstate_ref,finalstate_ref,0]], ...
320
            const_pts[1,trellisbranch[0,initstate_cur,finalstate_cur,0]]]
        plt.plot(x,y, 'r')
321
        x=[const_pts[0,trellisbranch[1,initstate_ref,finalstate_ref,0]], ...
322
            const_pts[0,trellisbranch[1,initstate_cur,finalstate_cur,0]]]
        y=[const_pts[1,trellisbranch[1,initstate_ref,finalstate_ref,0]],
323
            const_pts[1,trellisbranch[1,initstate_cur,finalstate_cur,0]]]
324
        plt.plot(x,y, 'q--')
325
```

326 for i in list(range(len(symbollist))): 327 plt.annotate(i, (const\_pts[0,i]+.07,const\_pts[1,i]+.07))